

Judi Moreillon

Coteaching Reading Comprehension Strategies in Elementary School Libraries

Maximizing Your Impact

American
Library
Association



**Coteaching Reading
Comprehension Strategies in
Elementary School Libraries**

ALA American
Library
Association

ALA Editions purchases fund advocacy, awareness,
and accreditation programs for library professionals worldwide.

ALA American
Library
Association

Coteaching Reading Comprehension Strategies in Elementary School Libraries

Maximizing Your Impact

Judi Moreillon

ALA American
Library
Association



An imprint of the American Library Association | Chicago | 2013

Judi Moreillon is a literacies and libraries consultant and assistant professor in the School of Library and Information Studies at Texas Woman's University. She teaches courses in school library administration, librarians as instructional partners, multimedia resources, storytelling, and children's and young adult literature. Judi earned her master's degree in library science from the School of Information Resources and Library Science at the University of Arizona and a doctorate in education at the same university in the Department of Language, Reading, and Culture. During her thirteen-year tenure as a school librarian, she collaborated with classroom teachers, specialists, and principals at the elementary, middle, and high school levels to integrate literature and information literacy into the classroom curriculum. Judi has also served as a district-level school librarian mentor, a literacy coach, a classroom teacher, and a preservice classroom teacher-educator. She chaired the American Association of School Librarians' (AASL) School Librarian's Role in Reading Task Force and served on the AASL Guidelines and Standards Implementation Task Force. Judi is currently researching the leadership and instructional partnership role of school librarians and factors that influence preservice classroom teachers' understanding and practice of classroom-library collaboration.

© 2013 by the American Library Association. Any claim of copyright is subject to applicable limitations and exceptions, such as rights of fair use and library copying pursuant to Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Act. No copyright is claimed for content in the public domain, such as works of the U.S. government.

Printed in the United States of America

17 16 15 14 13 5 4 3 2 1

Extensive effort has gone into ensuring the reliability of the information in this book; however, the publisher makes no warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein.

ISBNs: 978-0-8389-1180-8 (paper); 978-0-8389-9492-4 (PDF). For more information on digital formats, visit the ALA Store at alastore.ala.org and select eEditions.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Moreillon, Judi.

Coteaching reading comprehension strategies in elementary school libraries:
maximizing your impact / Judi Moreillon.

pages cm

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-0-8389-1180-8

1. Reading comprehension—Study and teaching (Elementary) 2. School
librarian participation in curriculum planning. 3. Teaching teams. I. Title.

LB1573.7.M657 2013

372.47—dc23

2012027393

Book design in Berkeley, St. Marie, and Avenir by Casey Bayer. Cover image © Dmitriy Shironosov/Shutterstock, Inc.

© This paper meets the requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

*With gratitude to the expert and generous colleagues
who have propelled my own development as an educator*

ALA American
Library
Association

Contents

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS ix

INTRODUCTION xi

1	: Collaborative Teaching in the Age of Accountability	1
2	: Maximizing Your Impact.....	9
3	: Reading Comprehension Strategy One: <i>Activating or Building Background Knowledge</i>	19
4	: Reading Comprehension Strategy Two: <i>Using Sensory Images</i>	41
5	: Reading Comprehension Strategy Three: <i>Questioning</i>	61
6	: Reading Comprehension Strategy Four: <i>Making Predictions and Inferences</i>	81
7	: Reading Comprehension Strategy Five: <i>Determining Main Ideas</i>	103
8	: Reading Comprehension Strategy Six: <i>Using Fix-up Options</i>	125
9	: Reading Comprehension Strategy Seven: <i>Synthesizing</i>	143

REFERENCES 167

INDEX 171



Supplemental materials, including lesson plan graphic organizers, can be found online at www.alaeditions.org/webextras.

Acknowledgments

There is nothing short of a legion of students of all ages, classroom teacher and school librarian colleagues, administrators, researchers, and scholars who have stimulated my thinking, furthered my knowledge, and shaped my beliefs about teaching and learning. Each of you has enriched my life and has deepened my commitment to the vital role of literacies and libraries in our lives.

I am grateful for the support and trust of my editor, Stephanie Zvirin. My longtime friend and school librarian colleague Diane “The Real Mrs.” Skorupski assisted in the revision of this edition. For the first edition of this book, another longtime friend and classroom teacher colleague, Denise Webb, gave me hours of her professional advice and critical feedback on the presentation of the lesson plans in this book as well as the web support for these lessons.

Finally, this book would not have been possible without my husband, Nick Vitale, and his fearless counsel, infinite patience, and enduring love.

Thank you all for teaching me.

Introduction

Something magical happened among the villagers. As each person opened their heart to give, the next person gave even more. And as this happened, the soup grew richer and smelled more delicious.

—From *Stone Soup*, retold and illustrated by Jon J. Muth

ALA American Association of School Librarians

The goal of *Coteaching Reading Comprehension Strategies in Elementary School Libraries: Maximizing Your Impact* is to help educators develop coteaching strategies to ensure student achievement, particularly in reading, a skill that impacts student success in every content area. It is founded on the belief that two heads—or more—are better than one. Research has shown a positive correlation between increased student achievement and school librarians and classroom teachers who engage in coplanning and coteaching (Achterman 2008). Working together, school librarians, classroom teachers, administrators, and families can create dynamic learning communities in which what is best for student learning is at the heart of every decision.

I wrote this book to support the collaborative work of elementary school librarians who want to develop their understanding of teaching reading comprehension strategies. I wrote it for educators who want to increase their expertise in using currently recognized best practices in instruction. The school librarians with whom I hope to share this work understand that, in order to make a positive impact on student achievement, they must teach what really matters in their schools. The most effective way to do that is to teach standards-based lessons every day in collaboration with classroom teacher colleagues. Through effective classroom-library collaboration, school librarians can help make others successful. They can support their colleagues in accomplishing their goals. These librarians are educators who intend

to position themselves as essential partners in the literacy programs in their schools.

Preservice school librarians are another readership for this book. As students of school librarianship prepare for their careers, I hope they embrace the mission of the school library as a hub of learning. The coteaching strategies offered in this book can help them make their instructional partner role their top priority. If this book can help preservice librarians learn the vocabulary and practices that guide the work of their classroom teacher colleagues, then they will enter the profession ready to create partnerships that will improve student learning.

Preservice classroom teachers are another readership for this book. From fall 2008 through spring 2010, all elementary education majors at Emporia State University were required to complete a course titled “The Elementary Teacher and the Library Media Specialist: Partners in Teaching Literature Appreciation and Information Literacy.” For four semesters and in all five sections of the course, preservice teachers read the previous edition of this book, *Collaborative Strategies for Teaching Reading Comprehension: Maximizing Your Impact* (Moreillon 2007). The goal of the course was to teach future elementary teachers the roles and responsibilities of the school librarian in teaching reading comprehension skills and in seeking out classroom-library collaboration for reading and information literacy instruction (Dow 2010). In “Library Materials for Children,” a Texas Woman’s University course for undergraduate preservice classroom teachers, this book is used to illuminate the invaluable instructional partnerships that classroom teachers and school librarians can build.

I hope classroom teachers, instructional and literacy coaches, curriculum specialists, and principals find this book useful in their work. The collaborative strategies presented can be applied for the benefit of students in many coteaching situations. The book can support lesson study, professional reading study groups, and site-level or district-level staff development efforts. School librarians can share this book

with their administrators and colleagues as a seed that can contribute to growing a culture of collaboration in their schools.

This book is about teaching reading comprehension strategies. The chapters describe the strategies and provide resources for teaching them. Sample lesson plans at three levels of reading development provide educators with opportunities to put the ideas and information in this book into action in their libraries and classrooms. The web extras for these lessons provide extensive support for teaching the sample lessons, including customized graphic organizers and rubrics. Completed teacher resources are provided to facilitate modeling the strategies. When appropriate, sample writing pieces or student work are available for reference. The web extras free up collaborators to focus on coteaching and monitoring student learning. Once educators have read the strategy chapters, the web support makes these sample lessons ready to use on Monday morning. Find these supplements at www.alaeditions.org/webextras.

Although school librarians can teach the lessons in this book without a collaborative partner, the strategies recommended here are designed for coteaching and are most compatible with open, flexibly scheduled school library programs. When the library schedule can accommodate consecutive days of coteaching or extended study periods, school librarians find their teaching has a greater impact on student learning. The ideas in this book are targeted to schools that strive to treat all educators as equals, endeavor to structure collaborative planning time into the school day, and are open to the potential of job-embedded professional development.

From my experience as a teacher educator, I learned that beginning classroom teachers need help locating appropriate resources. They need a great deal of support to learn curriculum design. They need to know how to integrate performance objectives from more than one content area into each of their lessons. They benefit from explicit modeling and from specific feedback about their teaching. With more and more novices entering the profession, there is a real need

to provide support for new teachers so they can be successful—so they remain in the profession and continue to develop as educators.

With members of an undergraduate teacher education program, I conducted a longitudinal study titled “Two Heads Are Better Than One: The Factors Influencing the Understanding and Practice of Classroom-Library Collaboration” (Moreillon 2008). This is a summary of what I learned. When these K–8 preservice teachers stepped into the building where they conducted their student teaching experience, little of what we had done in the university classroom made a significant difference. If their cooperating teacher had a value for classroom-library collaboration and worked with the school librarian, so did the student teacher. If the school librarian was someone who reached out to support the work of new teachers in the building, then the student teacher worked with the library program. If there was a paraprofessional or an incompetent librarian, or if a rigid library schedule did not provide opportunities for classroom teachers to have their curriculum needs met, then the student teacher did not collaborate with the library staff. If the library staff was unwelcoming, the student teachers and the children in their care simply did not use the library at all.

The bottom line is this: Each school librarian is the representative of the profession for the administrators, classroom teachers, student teachers, students, and families in that school community. Our profession is only as strong as each individual who serves in the role of school librarian. This book will provide you with background knowledge in literacy instruction based on research and writing in the fields of

education and librarianship and sample lessons to adapt with educators with whom you serve. Will you use this information to make something magical happen throughout your school learning community?

When educators contribute their expertise and willingness to learn to cocreate more responsive and more effective instructional programs, improved student learning can be the result. The complexity of 21st-century literacy and learning requires educators to collaborate to ensure that all students, regardless of their backgrounds, develop tools for success. Through coteaching, school librarians are in an ideal position to become teacher leaders in their schools. As declared in a widely distributed Dewitt Wallace–Reader’s Digest Library Power Project poster (circa 1994), “Teaching is too difficult to do alone; collaborate with your teacher-librarian.”

Finally, I use the term *school librarian* in this book because it was adopted in 2010 by the American Association of School Librarians as the official term for professionals who serve in this role. I personally prefer the term *teacher-librarian* and have used that term to describe myself during the twenty-plus years I have served in the profession. However, because school librarians in some states are not required to have classroom teacher preparation, certification, or experience, *teacher-librarian* is not the appropriate term for everyone practicing our profession. Just as I believe that all educators who call themselves school librarians should have graduate-level library science education and be state certified, I would suggest that people who lack teacher preparation and certification not call themselves teacher-librarians. I believe that preparation and certification really do matter.

Collaborative Teaching in the Age of Accountability

That morning there were more teachers than kids waiting for the nurse.
—From *Testing Miss Malarkey*, by Judy Finchler, illustrated by Kevin O'Malley

COLLABORATIVE TEACHING IN THE AGE OF ACCOUNTABILITY

MAXIMIZING YOUR IMPACT

- » Strategy One: *Activating or Building Background Knowledge*
- » Strategy Two: *Using Sensory Images*
- » Strategy Three: *Questioning*
- » Strategy Four: *Making Predictions and Inferences*
- » Strategy Five: *Determining Main Ideas*
- » Strategy Six: *Using Fix-up Options*
- » Strategy Seven: *Synthesizing*

In the 21st century, school districts and states struggle with accountability for student achievement in the form of data on standardized tests. It is no wonder that the classroom teachers and principal depicted in *Testing Miss Malarkey* feel anxious on the morning of “the test.” Today’s educators must cope with incredible pressure about students’ test scores. Among the many variables and factors that determine if a student, a classroom teacher, a school, a school district, or a state meets academic goals is the quality of instruction. How can the school librarian be an essential contributor on the teaching team that improves student achievement through best practices in instruction?

In *Empowering Learners: Guidelines for School Library Programs* (AASL 2009a), the American Association of School Librarians charges practitioners with five roles: leader, instructional partner, information specialist, teacher, and program administrator. In a study of the School Library Impact Studies (<http://lrs.org/impact.php>), Kachel et al. (2011) found that in fifteen out of twenty-one studies classroom-library collaboration was correlated with increased student achievement. Through coteaching, school librarians can enact the instructional partner role, demonstrate leadership, ensure that 21st-century skills and resources are integrated throughout the learning community, and achieve an integrated library program (Moreillon and Ballard 2012). Fortunately, many leaders and decision makers within the education community have come to value the potential impact of teaching

partnerships for improving instruction and student learning. While complying with government regulations such as Response to Intervention or engaging in site-based initiatives such as professional learning communities and lesson study, individual schools and entire districts are raising the bar for collaboration among faculty members. Working within collaborative structures, curriculum planning, joint lesson design, coteaching, and coassessment are becoming more valued, more widely practiced—and more effective.

In this culture of collaboration, coteaching among classroom teachers, reading and literacy specialists, special education teachers, and school librarians can contribute to improvements in educator proficiency and student learning. How can school librarians maximize the potential of this trend? Will serving on teaching teams as essential educators have a positive impact on student achievement, particularly in literacy instruction? AASL adopted its Position Statement on the School Librarian's Role in Reading (AASL 2009b). The rationale for the statement also appears in *Empowering Learners*. These are some of the reasons why and how school librarians can be key contributors to achievement in reading in their schools:

- Reading is a foundational skill for 21st-century learners.
- Guiding learners to become engaged and effective users of ideas and information and to appreciate literature requires that they develop as strategic readers who can comprehend, analyze, and evaluate text in both print and digital formats.
- The extent to which young people use information depends on their ability to understand what they read, to integrate that understanding with what they already know, and to form their unanswered questions.
- Twenty-first-century learners must become adept at determining authority and accuracy of information and analyzing and evaluating that information to synthesize new knowledge from multiple resources.

- The school librarian has a key role in supporting print and online reading comprehension strategy instruction in collaboration with classroom teachers and reading specialists.
- School librarians codesign, coimplement, and coevaluate interdisciplinary lessons and units of instruction that result in increased student learning (AASL 2009a, 22–23).

As the position statement notes, “School librarians are in a critical and unique position to partner with other educators to elevate the reading development of our nation’s youth” (AASL 2009a, 22). Figure 1-1 shows the bullet points from the statement, which outline a central role for school librarians in their schools’ reading programs.

This statement appears in the *Standards for the 21st-Century Learner* under the common belief related to reading: “The degree to which students can read and understand text in all formats (e.g., picture, video, print) and in all contexts is a key indicator of success in school and in life” (AASL 2007). In short, students must be proficient readers in order to become information literate, but far too many are not. It is important to note that the Common Core State Standards (<http://corestandards.org>) emphasize reading in social studies and science classes as well as language arts. This presents a timely opportunity for school librarians to support content area teachers through coteaching reading strategies using subject-specific texts.

SCHOOL LIBRARIANS AS LITERACY LEADERS

Clearly, school librarians and school library programs are significant in helping students achieve, and reading is definitely one core content area in which school librarians must have the instructional skills and resources to maximize their impact on student learning. Although decoding skills are best taught in the classroom where classroom teachers can closely monitor the progress of individual children,

Fig. 1-1 Bullet Points from the Position Statement on the School Librarian's Role in Reading

- School libraries provide students, staff, and families with open, nonrestricted access to a varied high quality collection of reading materials in multiple formats that reflect academic needs and personal interests.
- School librarians practice responsive collection development and support print-rich environments that reflect the curriculum and the diverse learning needs of the school community.
- School librarians take a leadership role in organizing and promoting literacy projects and events that engage learners and motivate them to become lifelong readers.
- Classroom teachers, reading specialists, and school librarians select materials, promote the curricular and independent use of resources, including traditional and alternative materials, and plan learning experiences that offer whole classes, small groups, and individual learners an interdisciplinary approach to literacy learning.
- Classroom and library collaborative instruction is evidence-based, using research in librarianship, reading, English-language arts, and educational technology in order to maximize student learning. School librarians partner with classroom teachers, specialists and other literacy colleagues to make decisions about reading initiatives and reading comprehension instruction, and to develop all learners' curiosity in, and intellectual access to, appropriate resources in all formats and media.
- When learners follow an inquiry process they assess and use reading comprehension strategies. The skills identified in the *Standards for the 21st-Century Learner* align with the reading process.
- Opportunities for planned and spontaneous library use best serve learners as they identify, analyze, and synthesize ideas and information by using a wide range of materials in a variety of formats and media. Availability of library resources and professional staff at point of need develops intellectual behaviors that transfer to future academic pursuits and lifelong academic and public library use.
- Along with classroom and reading specialist colleagues, school librarians provide and participate in continual professional development in reading that reflects current research in the area of reading instruction and promotion.

Excerpted from *Position Statement on the School Librarian's Role in Reading* by the American Association of School Librarians, a division of the American Library Association, ©2009 American Library Association. Available for download at www.ala.org/ala/mgrps/divs/aasl/aaslissues/positionstatements/roleinreading.cfm. Used with permission.

the school librarian is perfectly positioned to be a coteacher of reading comprehension strategies. With access to a variety of resources in multiple formats at a wide range of reading levels, what is the best way for school librarians to realize their potential with regard to teaching these strategies?

Although research has consistently shown that ready access to a wide variety of reading materials increases the chances that students will become readers and choose to read (Krashen 2004), serving as recreational reading motivators and nurturers is not enough. All educators, including school librarians, must support student achievement in reading through systematic instruction. Forming partnerships with classroom teachers to help teach students to employ their decoding skills in order to make meaning from text is natural for school librarians and school library

programs. These classroom-library interactions begin at the level of providing necessary resources and develop to full collaboration in which school librarians and classroom teachers are equal partners who codesign, coimplement, and coassess student outcomes, including “how-to” reading comprehension strategy lessons. *Taxonomies of the School Library Media Program* (Loertscher 2000) specifies these levels of programmatic involvement.

School librarians can move their work up toward the top of the taxonomy by coplanning and coteaching how-to reading comprehension strategy lessons in order to improve all students' learning while they are engaged with library resources and content across grade levels. These lessons and units of instruction can become the “assured” learning experiences in which every student in the school participates during

a particular unit of study or at a specific grade level. Some possible examples include a series of first-grade fiction and informational book lessons, a third-grade science project, or a fifth-grade social studies inquiry unit. The school librarian can be key in codeveloping these units, coteaching to the targeted learning objectives, and coassessing students' mastery of literacy skills and the effectiveness of instruction. Librarians can participate in collecting data, analyzing it, reporting on it, and modifying instruction in order to ensure that students are learning through these assured experiences.

The practices put forward in this book move school librarians up the taxonomy to the highest instructional design level, where they serve as full partners with classroom teachers in coteaching lessons supported by the resources of the school library. In the age of accountability, this level of involvement in the school's academic program is a necessity. Throughout the school day, school librarians serve in various capacities, depending on students' and classroom teachers' needs, but the goal should always be to spend the most time and energy at the top of the taxonomy, as full-fledged collaborating members of the school's instructional teams.

STRATEGIES FOR COLLABORATIVE TEACHING

What does it mean to collaborate? Friend and Cook explain interpersonal collaboration as "a style for direct interaction between at least two coequal parties voluntarily engaged in shared decision making as they work toward a common goal" (2010, 7). Collaboration describes *how* people work together rather than *what* they do. It is a dynamic, interactive process between equal partners who strive together to reach excellence.

Collaborative teaching involves an ongoing, engaging relationship. On the other hand, coteaching can occur in limited form with minimal collaboration. Although the title of this book contains the word *coteaching*, the goal of team teaching the sample lesson plans is to plant seeds from which coteaching

can blossom into truly collaborative instructional partnerships.

Collaboration can happen in the planning, implementation, and assessment stages of teaching. Ideally, it happens at all three. In the planning process, educators establish shared goals and specific learning outcomes for students as well as codevelop assessment tools to evaluate student outcomes. They discuss students' background knowledge, prior learning experiences, and skill development and determine what resources will best meet learners' needs (see www.alaeditions.org/webextras for Collaborative Planning Forms, samples 1–3).

Educators decide on one or more coteaching approaches, assign responsibilities for particular aspects of the lesson, and schedule teaching time based on the needs of students and the requirements of the learning tasks. Figure 1-2 shows possible coteaching configurations (Friend and Cook 2010, 120–28). Depending on the lesson, students' prior knowledge and skill development, areas of expertise of educators, and the level of trust with one another, collaborators can assume one or more of these roles during a lesson or unit of instruction.

Of these five approaches, team teaching requires the most collaboration and is the approach needed to most effectively teach the sample lessons offered in this book. Team teaching requires careful planning, respect for each educator's style, and ultimately a shared belief in the value that this level of risk taking can offer students and educators. Collaborative work can be supported or hindered by school culture. For it to be most effective, principals must set expectations and educators must welcome coteaching and use shared planning time for collaborative work. They must value the investment in time and effort. A shared spirit of experimentation and the commitment to developing trust are essential when adult learners form instructional partnerships. Respect for each other's areas of expertise and willingness by all to continue learning are critical. School librarians, working within a supportive learning community, must develop interpersonal skills as well as teaching expertise that can allow team teaching to flourish.

Fig. 1-2 Coteaching Approaches

One Teaching, One Supporting	One educator is responsible for teaching the lesson while the other observes the lesson, monitors particular students, and provides assistance as needed.
Station or Center Teaching	After determining curriculum content for multiple learning stations, each educator takes responsibility for facilitating one or more learning centers while in other centers students may work independent of adult support.
Parallel Teaching	After collaborative planning, each educator works with half the class to teach the same or similar content. Groups may switch or reconvene as a whole class to share, compare, debrief, or reflect.
Alternative Teaching	One educator preteaches or reteaches concepts to a small group while the other educator teaches a different lesson to the larger group. (Preteaching vocabulary or other lesson components can be especially valuable for English language learners or special needs students.)
Team Teaching	Educators teach together by assuming different roles during instruction, such as reader or recorder or questioner and responder, modeling partner work, role playing or debating, and more.

Adapted from Friend and Cook (2010, 120–28).

After coplanning and coimplementing lessons and units of instruction, it is logical that evaluating student learning products is part of a shared responsibility for coteaching. Checklists, rating scales, rubrics, and self-reflections, developed with colleagues or with students in advance of the lesson or early in the unit, establish the criteria for formative assessments during the lesson or summative assessment at the end of a unit. Students should use these tools to guide, revise, and self-assess their work. Educators can use the same criteria to assess students' learning processes and final products and to inform their own teaching.

Educators may decide to divide assessment on the basis of components of the lesson for which each one took primary responsibility. For example, school librarians may take the lead in teaching notemaking skills and may then be responsible for assessing students' notes with a rubric. Joint assessment can happen before a lesson is designed when educators administer pretests to determine the students' level of skill development or prior knowledge of a particular topic or concept. Even if they did not coteach a

lesson, educators might ask one another to provide another set of eyes to evaluate the effectiveness of instruction based on students' learning products. In *Assessing Learning: Librarians and Teachers as Partners*, Harada and Yoshina (2005) provide a comprehensive guide to best practices in assessment.

Coassessing the lesson or unit of instruction is too often overlooked. After coplanning, coteaching, and coassessing students' work, instructional partners must make time to debrief in order to determine which aspects of the lesson helped students meet the learning objectives and which components need revision. If educators are team teaching, then some of this evaluation occurs as they share responsibility for monitoring learning and adjusting teaching while the lesson or unit is in progress. Returning to diagnostic data, such as a content-specific pretest or information literacy pretest like TRAILS: Tool for Real-time Assessment of Information Literacy Skills (www.trails-9.org) provides educators with information they need to analyze summative achievement data. Evaluating these data and reflecting on the lesson or unit after

it has been taught are important for instructional improvement and for educators' professional growth. These best practices help educators clearly articulate the relationships between their goals and objectives for student learning and student outcomes. Reflective practitioners focus on students' learning to improve their own practice and revise instruction.

COLLABORATION AND SCHOOL REFORM

Why is collaboration necessary in our schools? What could happen if classroom teachers and school librarians combined their expertise and talents to share responsibility for teaching students? Barth observes that collegial relationships in schools are both "highly prized" and "highly elusive" preconditions for school reform, and in a collegial school he would expect to see educators

- talking about practice,
- sharing craft knowledge,
- observing one another while they are engaged in practice, and
- rooting for one another's success (2006, 11).

Classroom-library collaboration meets all four of these criteria. When educators coplan, coimplement, and coassess lessons and units of instruction, they cannot help but talk about practice, share craft knowledge, observe one another teaching, and root for one another's success. Through collaborative teaching, educators develop a common language, a common set of practices, and channels for communication that can increase student learning and help the entire school community better serve the academic and social needs of students and families.

In *What Works in Schools: Translating Research into Action*, Marzano (2003) shares thirty-five years of research related to improving student achievement. He delineates school-level, teacher-level, and student-level factors that affect student achievement. At the school level, a guaranteed and viable curriculum, challenging goals and feedback, parent and

community involvement, a safe and orderly environment, and collegiality and professionalism all have positive impacts on student outcomes. At the teacher level, instructional strategies, classroom management, and classroom curriculum design improve student achievement. At the student level, the home atmosphere, learned intelligence and background knowledge, and motivation all affect students' learning. Many of these factors, including collegiality, instructional strategies, and curriculum design, are directly addressed in this book.

Students come to school with varying background knowledge, learning styles, linguistic and cultural heritages, values, and beliefs about learning and schooling. The resulting diversity among students requires that schools continuously adapt and step up to meet individual learner's needs. Today's school reform movements are based in large part on the challenge of making sure all students have every opportunity to reach their potential. Collaborative teaching between classroom teachers, specialists, and school librarians using the strategies suggested in this book benefits students because it puts the focus on learning outcomes. But that's not all it does. Coteaching supports adult learning as well. Figure 1-3 outlines the benefits of collaborative teaching to students and educators.

In school restructuring, the most powerful impediment to reform is teacher isolation (Lieberman 1995, 10). Just as learning is social for students, it is also social for adults. Innovations in teaching cannot spread throughout a learning community if educators remain isolated, separate in their classrooms and libraries. As figure 1-3 clearly shows, educators who coteach not only improve student learning but also create learning opportunities for themselves and for each other.

PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT AT THE POINT OF PRACTICE

"The most powerful forms of professional learning are embedded in teachers' daily work, address the core tasks of teaching, and support teachers in forming

Fig. 1-3 Benefits of Classroom-Library Collaboration Based on Coteaching

For Students . . .	For Educators . . .
More individualized attention	More opportunities to work one-on-one with students
Better designed lessons	Clarification of goals and objectives through joint planning; coassessment of lesson effectiveness
Increased opportunity for differentiated instruction	Improved facilitation of differentiated instruction
Access to information at the point of need	Literature and information literacy skills integrated in a meaningful way into the classroom curriculum
Access to multiple resources, including technology	Shared responsibility for gathering engaging, effective resources
More engagement due to fewer distractions	Fewer classroom management issues
More material or deeper investigations into concepts and topics	More teaching time (due to fewer management issues and scheduling to achieve student learning objectives)
Expanded opportunities for creativity	Expanded opportunities for creativity
Acquiring of skills for lifelong learning	Personal and professional growth opportunities through coteaching and coassessment of student learning
Integrated learning	Integrated teaching

productive relationships with colleagues and students” (Sparks 2007, 169). Adult learning in schools is best implemented at the point of practice. School librarians, who wisely create a shared professional development space in the library and its accompanying computer labs, offer colleagues an opportunity to model and practice lifelong learning alongside them in a nonthreatening environment. Some have called this model the “Information Commons,” where student learning and curriculum and professional development are focused in the physical and virtual space of the school library (Loertscher, Koechlin, and Zwaan 2008).

Rather than being a formal one-day or separate event, effective professional development should be more informal, a regular part of an educator’s everyday work. It should occur in real time, with real students and real curriculum, and within the real support and constraints in which students learn and teachers teach. Ongoing, continuous improvement in teaching

practices is necessary if educators are to ensure that diverse learners have the maximum opportunity for achievement. Classroom-library collaboration for instruction can succeed if educators approach this model as reciprocal mentorship between two coequal partners whose goal is to engage students in learning and to improve their own teaching practices.

“The single most effective way in which principals can function as staff development leaders is providing a school context that fosters job-embedded professional development” (DuFour 2001, 14–15). School principals are central figures in building a culture of collaboration within the school learning community. They must provide educators with time to coplan during contract hours. They can support coteaching by endorsing collaborative teaching for performance evaluations and by spotlighting effective collaborative teaching in faculty meetings and in newsletters to families. As instructional leaders, principals are pivotal in establishing value for collaborative teaching.

Using resources as an entrée, school librarians have natural opportunities to begin curriculum conversations. These conversations provide doors through which school librarians can invite and initiate classroom-library collaboration for instruction. The model for collaborative teaching offered in this book is founded on parity and shared risk taking. The resulting coteaching fosters job-embedded professional development for classroom teachers, specialists, and school librarians that will improve the literacy learning in their schools.

If educators hope to prepare young people for living and working in the 21st century, and they target 21st-century skill objectives in their lessons, then they should be mindful of the ways they do or do not model these behaviors for students. What is the covert curriculum in our schools? What attitudes and behaviors are educators modeling as they teach a standards-based curriculum? *Empowering Learners: Guidelines for School Library Programs* (AASL 2009a) and organizations such as the Partnership for 21st Century Skills (P21 2006) charge educators with teaching learning and thinking skills such as critical thinking, problem solving, collaboration, communication, and information and media literacy. Coteaching is one way for educators to model and practice these behaviors.

The organic nature of the classroom-library collaboration model offers on-site, job-embedded professional development integrated into the daily practice of educators. Through shared responsibility, coteachers create opportunities for reciprocal mentoring and ongoing shared reflection. Collaboration for instruction lowers student-teacher ratios at the point of practice. More students have opportunities for individualized attention, and groups of students can be better supported as they learn essential skills and content in different ways. Two or more educators can monitor and adjust teaching and assess students' learning processes and products as well as evaluate the lessons themselves.

School librarians' effectiveness as educators may hinge on being considered peers by classroom teacher colleagues and coequals with classroom teachers by administrators. As Zmuda and Harada attest, "Effective partnerships help teachers to meet their existing priorities, which include the implementation of a standards-based curriculum" (2008, 38). With the current emphasis on accountability, school librarians must meet the imperative to foster student achievement through effective instruction. But until school librarians serve as full members of instructional teams, their true value as educators cannot be measured.

Maximizing Your Impact

Reading was just plain torture. When Sue Ellyn read her page, or Tommy Bob read his page, they read so easily that Trisha would watch the top of their heads to see if something was happening to their heads that wasn't happening to hers.

—From *Thank You, Mr. Falker*, by Patricia Polacco

COLLABORATIVE TEACHING IN THE AGE OF ACCOUNTABILITY

MAXIMIZING YOUR IMPACT

- » Strategy One: *Activating or Building Background Knowledge*
- » Strategy Two: *Using Sensory Images*
- » Strategy Three: *Questioning*
- » Strategy Four: *Making Predictions and Inferences*
- » Strategy Five: *Determining Main Ideas*
- » Strategy Six: *Using Fix-up Options*
- » Strategy Seven: *Synthesizing*

Literacy is a foundational tool; it is also a lifelong process. In the 21st century, there is universal agreement on the goal of developing the higher-order thinking capabilities of our nation's youth. This ability is founded on literacy. Comprehension, critical thinking, reasoning, and problem solving are top priorities (Fullan 2003). To achieve this level of excellence and equity in education, educators must be fully engaged and empowered to create, develop, and monitor the conditions for success for all students. That means educators and students must take the literacy learning journey together.

What is reading? Simply put, reading is making meaning from print and from visual information. But reading is not simple. Reading is an active process that requires a great deal of practice and skill. It is a complex task which, as Polacco's autobiographical character Trisha noted, seems to go on inside people's heads like so much magic in a magician's top hat. To be readers, learners must take their ability to pronounce words and to "read" pictures and then make the words and images *mean* something. Reading comprehension strategies are tools that proficient readers use to solve the comprehension problems they encounter in texts.

In this book, I define seven reading comprehension strategies. Readers who learn and employ these strategies have tools they can use to solve comprehension problems (Zimmerman and Hutchins 2003):

1. Activating or building background knowledge
2. Using sensory images
3. Questioning
4. Making predictions and inferences
5. Determining main ideas
6. Using fix-up options
7. Synthesizing

Each of the following chapters defines one of these reading comprehension strategies, discusses considerations for teaching it, offers children's literature resources, and presents three sample how-to strategy lessons that will help students use the strategies to make meaning from text. The lessons are intended as models for educators to modify to meet the needs of the learners in their care and to adapt for the content of their school curricula. The lessons include before, during, and after reading strategies that help students develop as readers who understand their own thinking processes, who practice metacognition.

Although the lessons offered in this book can be taught by individual educators, they are designed to maximize opportunities for coteaching and lowering the student-teacher ratio during instruction through classroom-library collaboration. The lessons allow educators to work with smaller groups and with individuals because flexible groupings are best facilitated with two or more educators in the same room at the same time. These lessons can also be taught effectively by school librarians in collaboration with classroom and special education teachers, reading and literacy coaches, and curriculum and other specialists.

FOUNDATIONS AND BEST PRACTICES FOR TEACHING READING COMPREHENSION STRATEGIES

The how-to lessons presented in this book provide models that can guide educators as they help students

acquire reading strategies. The strategies define what is taught, but how the lessons were designed and how they are taught are equally important. These lessons are based on five foundational best practices in school librarianship and instruction: evidence-based practice, backward planning, aligning and integrating information literacy standards with the classroom curriculum, using research-based instructional strategies, and modeling with think-aloud strategies. A glossary of terms is provided at www.alaeditions.org/webextras.

School librarians can confidently build collaborative practices on the firm foundation of the findings of the School Library Impact Studies (<http://lrs.org/impact.php>), but they must continually demonstrate to students, classroom colleagues, school administrators, parents, and the public that what they do in their daily practice results in improved student achievement. School librarians must understand that everyone is “from Missouri” and needs to be shown that school library programs make a difference. Todd notes that evidence-based practice is “critical to the future sustainability of the profession, and represents one of the most significant challenges facing school librarianship” (2001, 1). School librarians can use the sample lessons offered in this book to take action at their school sites and advance local academic goals that connect with what matters in most elementary schools—achievement in reading as a foundational skill for learning in all content areas. By coteaching reading comprehension strategies alongside classroom teachers, school librarians can gather evidence that their instruction makes a difference in student learning.

According to Wiggins and McTighe (2005), effective instructional design begins with determining student learning outcomes. Commonly called backward planning, this conceptual framework requires that educators first select learning objectives (based on curriculum standards). These objectives should be based on pretests, student inventories and reporting, teacher observation, or other data. Next, educators determine and describe the learning tasks and the criteria on which student work will be assessed as

well as a tool with which to assess it. All learning tasks are then designed to help students meet these criteria. This is all accomplished before the teaching methods and resource materials are selected and long before the lesson begins. The how-to lessons in this book were designed with this framework, except that one aspect of the teaching method, coteaching, was assumed. With its focus on outcomes, the backward design framework is ideal for evidence-based classroom-library collaborative instruction.

Standards for the 21st-Century Learner (AASL 2007) indicators are identified for these strategy lessons. Keywords in the AASL standards are not always readily found in national or state-level core subject curriculum standards. For example, a reading standard that requires students to “synthesize and make logical connections between ideas within a text and across two or three texts” is aligned with AASL Indicator 1.1.7: “Make sense of information gathered from diverse sources by identifying misconceptions, main and supporting ideas, conflicting information, and point of view or bias.” In support of librarians in states that have adopted the Common Core State Standards, AASL published a crosswalk between those standards and *Standards for the 21st-Century Learner* (www.ala.org/aasl/guidelinesandstandards/commoncorecrosswalk).

Figure 2-1 shows the alignment between the seven strategies presented in this book and selected AASL standards indicators. School librarians should also consider standards initiatives privileged at their school sites, such as state standards, the Common Core State Standards (www.corestandards.org), the skills outlined by the Partnership for 21st Century Skills (www.p21.org), or the NETS*S, the International Society for Technology in Education Standards for Students (www.iste.org/standards/nets-for-students.aspx).

Notemaking is one information literacy skill that is used across the strategy lessons. Students benefit from using a variety of notemaking formats including linear formats such as outlining and nonlinear such as webbing (Dean et al. 2012). Figure 2-2 is a chart that states the goal of notemaking and some commonly used types of notes. (This chart is also available as a

web extra.) In this book, the term *notemaking* is used rather than the term *note taking*. Notemaking implies that learners record information in their own words; note taking implies that learners have copied verbatim from texts. When students copy verbatim, they are rarely prioritizing or analyzing information. Educators can model recording a direct quote, passing that information through their prior knowledge and experience, and then making a note or two in their own words to show what they understand or have learned from the quoted sentence or passage. Demonstrating this process in all content areas and with many different kinds of texts is an important part of teaching notemaking.

Notemaking also requires that students carefully record information in order to be able to cite their sources. School librarians can contribute various kinds of support for students to keep track of their resources in the form of paper or electronic graphic organizers; students and educators may also have access to electronic tools, such as NoodleTools (www.noodletools.com), that help students record their sources and link them to their notes. Matching up bibliographic forms and notemaking graphic organizers is one way to ensure that students know the source of their information, can return to it for clarification if need be, and can cite it in their final products; see the advanced lesson plan in chapter 9 for examples of these graphic organizers. Educators can also facilitate a discussion of plagiarism and provide guidelines for avoiding plagiarism, the most important of which are to make notes in one’s own words, to quote copied material, and to record sources. Clearly, these are information literacy skills that can be integrated in many content-area, standards-based lessons at the elementary school level.

In *Classroom Instruction That Works: Research-Based Strategies for Increasing Student Achievement*, Marzano, Pickering, and Pollock (2001) offer a summary of a meta-analysis of studies conducted by researchers at Mid-continent Research for Education and Learning. These studies analyzed the effectiveness of specific components of instruction. The authors identified nine instructional strategies that have a strong effect on student achievement; six of these are used as

Fig. 2-1 Alignment Matrix for Reading Comprehension Strategies and Indicators from *Standards for the 21st-Century Learner*

Activating or Building Background Knowledge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use prior and background knowledge as context for new learning. (1.1.2) • Read widely and fluently to make connections with own self, the world, and previous reading. (4.1.2) • Recognize when, why, and how to focus efforts in personal learning. (4.4.3) • Connect ideas to own interests and previous knowledge and experience. (4.1.5)
Using Sensory Images	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6) • Read, view, and listen for pleasure and for personal growth. (4.1.1)
Questioning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Develop and refine a range of questions to frame search for new understanding. (1.1.3) • Find, evaluate, and select appropriate sources to answer questions. (1.1.4) • Display initiative and engagement by posing questions and investigating the answers beyond the collection of superficial facts. (1.2.1)
Drawing Inferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
Determining Main Ideas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
Using Fix-up Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Monitor own information-seeking processes for effectiveness and progress, and adapt as necessary. (1.4.1)
Synthesizing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sense of information gathered from diverse sources by identifying misconceptions, main and supporting ideas, conflicting information, and point of view or bias. (1.1.7) • Continue an inquiry-based research process by applying critical-thinking skills (analysis, synthesis, evaluation, organization) to information and knowledge in order to construct new understandings, draw conclusions, and create new knowledge. (2.1.1) • Use strategies to draw conclusions from information and apply knowledge to curricular areas, real world situations, and further investigations. (2.1.3)
All Reading Comprehension Strategies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6) • Respond to literature and creative expressions of ideas in various formats and genres. (4.1.3)

Excerpted from *Standards for the 21st-Century Learner* by the American Association of School Librarians, a division of the American Library Association, copyright © 2007 American Library Association. Available for download at www.ala.org/standards. Used with permission.

support for the how-to lessons in this book. Figure 2-3 identifies the strategies selected for the lessons and the related percentile gains on standardized tests.

These gain figures in figure 2-3 are based on an average student being exposed to a particular strategy

compared with a student who was not instructed in the strategy. The authors used a statistical conversion table to transform study effect sizes into student percentile gains. For example, if a student learns to employ the similarities and differences strategy, then

Fig. 2-2 Notemaking Chart

Notemaking = Information in your own words
 Types of notes:
 Single words and phrases
 Lists
 Abbreviations
 Drawings
 References to a page number

her score on achievement tests may increase by as much as 45 percentage points. In order to achieve these gains, teachers must incorporate these strategies systematically and intentionally (Dean et al. 2012). These potential test score gains suggest that students can practice reading comprehension strategies more effectively by using research-based instructional strategies in the learning process.

These instructional strategies were integrated into the sample lesson plans on the basis of their appropriateness in supporting the learning objectives. Four forms of identifying similarities and differences are used in the lessons: comparing using Venn diagrams, classifying using category matrices and webs, creating metaphors (or similes), and creating analogies. Summarizing is used in the main ideas strategy lessons (chapter 7) as well as in reflective paragraphs in lessons in other chapters. Notemaking is used throughout the lessons. Drawing pictures, creating graphs, and kinesthetic activities are three types of nonlinguistic representation students use to show their learning in the sample lessons. Educators role-play cooperative strategies, and students engage in cooperative learning in many lessons. Setting objectives and providing feedback are essential components of every sample lesson offered in this book. In lessons targeted for several different strategies, cues, questions, and advance organizers help students activate or build their prior knowledge and prepare them for the learning tasks.

Finally, using think-aloud strategies during modeling is a common thread throughout the how-to lessons offered in this book. This research-based best practice in reading instruction makes the invisible cognitive processes of reading “visible” to students (Wilhelm 2001). Providing models for less-developed readers, proficient readers share how they solve comprehension problems by using think-alouds while reading a text. For example, while reading *Thank You, Mr. Falker*, a reader may stop and say, “I can’t understand why Trisha is reacting this way. She seems so hurt and angry. Has anyone ever made me feel this way? Maybe if I replay the scene in my mind, if I visualize it, I will understand her actions.” This reader is showing how using her background knowledge and visualizing the action can help her understand the character’s behavior.

THE METAPHOR OF THE ELEPHANT AND THE SEVEN READING COMPREHENSION STRATEGIES

In his retelling of an ancient East Indian fable, “The Blind Men and the Elephant,” author-illustrator Ed Young gives young and mature readers alike the

Fig. 2-3 Instructional Strategies That Affect Student Achievement on Standardized Tests

Category	% Gain
Identifying similarities and differences	45
Summarizing and note taking	34
Nonlinguistic representations	27
Cooperative learning	27
Setting objectives and providing feedback	23
Questions, cues, and advance organizers	22

Selected from Marzano, Pickering, and Pollock (2001).

perfect metaphor for the seven reading comprehension strategies presented in this book. In this tale, each blind mouse goes out to investigate the “strange Something” by their pond. Each one describes a part of the “Something” while considering its shape and relating it to a familiar object. The elephant’s tail is thought to be a rope, its ear a fan, and so on. All but the final mouse comprehend only isolated parts of the elephant and therefore come to partial and erroneous conclusions based on those single aspects alone. It is only when the seventh blind mouse considers all the parts that the mice are able to make sense of the whole; they are able to comprehend the elephant fully.

Unlike the blind mice who consider only shape, readers can relate parts of an elephant to the seven reading comprehension strategies based on the function they serve. Constructing metaphors is one of the research-based instructional strategies that increases student achievement (Marzano, Pickering, and Pollock 2001). Although the tail is found at the end of the elephant, background knowledge comes first, because without it readers have no place to begin. Sensory imagery symbolized by the ear follows because using sensory imagery is more than using visual information or visualizing. It requires readers to engage all their senses to make meaning. Asking questions, represented by the elephant’s probing tusks, and making predictions and inferences, the head, require higher-order thinking skills that stretch the reader to go beyond a text’s denotation on the page or screen to explore connotations. The legs, which support all the weight, represent the main ideas. Readers must analyze texts to determine the main ideas and to compose summaries. The fix-up strategy, suggested by the multitasking trunk, allows readers to recover lost comprehension. It uses a set of options that can be taught one by one, but altogether they show the complexity of monitoring and recovering meaning. And finally, synthesis, the whole elephant, requires that readers use all the strategies to bring together ideas and evidence from multiple texts and combine them with their own interpretations to transform information into knowledge. Strategic readers are readers who apply these strategies seamlessly in their reading process.

The metaphors serve as handy shorthand for students and educators to communicate about the meaning of the comprehension strategies. The chapter 2 web extras for this book include bookmarks that can be used to remind students of these metaphors. On one side of the bookmarks, the parts of the elephant and the comparable reading comprehension strategies are listed. The reverse side lists fix-up options at three levels of sophistication beginning with eight options for emerging readers, twelve for advancing readers, and all sixteen for advanced readers. Students can refer to the bookmarks as they read and practice the strategies.

Like the blind mice, educators and students could be deceived by perceiving each reading comprehension strategy as able to stand alone, isolated from the others. In truth, all of these strategies use aspects of the others. When applying background knowledge, readers recall sensory images. Predictions are often based on our background knowledge, what readers know from life experiences or from reading other texts. Identifying main ideas and synthesizing are common aspects of our thinking processes in all of these comprehension strategies. Many of the fix-up options are based on the strategies themselves: try to visualize, ask a new question, make a prediction, and so on. Active readers utilize multiple comprehension strategies as they engage with texts. Teachers and students must remember that the ultimate goal is to utilize combinations of strategies when they are appropriate to different types of text, purposes for reading, and comprehension challenges. (The order of the chapters in this book reflects a logical sequence for building students’ comprehension strategy repertoires rather than following the order of the elephant parts as presented in Young’s book.)

SAMPLE LESSONS AND LESSON FORMAT

This book offers sample lesson plans at three levels of reading development: emerging, advancing, and advanced. Emerging readers have a working

knowledge of decoding; they are primed to begin to develop their independent reading abilities. Advancing readers, while still mastering the finer points of decoding, are regularly reading texts independently. Advanced readers have mastered decoding and are reading more sophisticated texts independently. These levels of literacy development are not related to specific grade levels. A lesson that may be appropriate for kindergarten students in one classroom may be equally effective for second-grade students in another. It is up to educators, who have assessed the students' level of proficiency before initiating instruction, to determine which lesson level or levels are appropriate. Observation, self-reporting questionnaires, interviews, and formal pretests are some diagnostic tools educators can use to determine students' proficiency levels or readiness for new learning.

All readers can benefit from specific instruction in reading comprehension strategies. As readers continue to practice the strategies with the support of educator modeling, they should begin to take increasing responsibility for guiding the strategy lessons. When they effectively apply these comprehension strategies in their independent reading, the strategies become skills and there is no longer a need for explicit instruction. Educator Janet Allen describes a skill as "a strategy that's gone underground."

Figure 2-4 shows the lesson format for the how-to strategy lessons offered in this book. The planning section extends from the reading comprehension strategy through the standards; the lesson implementation or process follows. All of the lessons assume that educators have determined in advance that students will benefit from learning the target reading comprehension strategy. Learning and practicing the strategy are the overarching objectives for the lesson. The lesson format lists the level of reading development, followed by the research-based instructional strategies selected to support this lesson. The lesson length is an average. One "session" is about forty-five minutes of instructional time. Depending on the learners' characteristics, educators may need to revise the lesson length. It is assumed that lessons are taught in whatever location is best for the students,

educators, and content, be it the library, computer lab, or classroom. The purpose for the lesson is directly related to the students' need and readiness for the instruction.

The objectives for each lesson use terms taken from performance objectives found in state standards. For local documentation, educators can conduct electronic searches of standards documents to locate the keywords found in the objectives. To manage lesson

Fig. 2-4 Sample "How-To" Strategy Lesson Format: Planning and Implementation

Planning

- Reading Comprehension Strategy
- Reading Development Level
- Instructional Strategies
- Lesson Length
- Purpose
- Objectives
- Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Children's literature
Websites
Graphic organizers
Materials
Equipment

- Collaboration
- Assessment
- Standards

Reading and/or writing
Listening and speaking
Other content areas
Educational technology
AASL indicators

Implementation

- Process
 - Motivation
 - Student-friendly objectives
 - Presentation
 - Student participation procedures, or
 - Student practice procedures
 - Guided practice
 - Closure
 - Reflection
- Extensions

length, picture books are used as mentor texts for these lessons. In this book, the term *text* refers to a work in its totality, words and illustrations. The term *print* refers to the words only, and the term *illustration* refers to artwork and a variety of other graphic features.

In the list of children's literature at the end of each chapter, the starred titles indicate the books used in the lessons. At the time of this writing, all of the children's literature chosen for the lessons was available for purchase, and some of the titles were available in Spanish. Educators are not limited to using these books, but the characteristics of titles should be considered if substitute texts are selected. Only websites with relative permanence are included in this book. I will maintain Internet pathfinders to ensure that websites are functional. A complete set of graphic organizers and rubrics is available as part of the web support for this book. Required materials are listed, as is equipment. When the terms *post*, *project*, and *class-size graphic organizer* appear in the lesson plans, educators can use data projectors or interactive whiteboards to share documents with students. The resources and materials were carefully selected to support the instructional objectives of each lesson.

In the collaboration section of each lesson plan, strategies for coteaching the lessons are described. These strategies can and should be adapted to fit the needs of students, educators, and the particular learning environment. In making adjustments, educators should remember that the lessons were designed to lower the student-teacher ratio during the presentation or guided practice components of the lessons. The sources for assessment of student outcomes are given in the assessment section. It is critical that educators share the assessment criteria with students in advance of the guided practice and that they model using the rubrics and other assessment tools. If the completeness of a graphic organizer is the assessment, educators need to be especially careful to establish the criteria through modeling.

The AASL standards indicators are cited verbatim, and other curriculum standards are listed as keywords. As with the lesson objectives, educators can search

standards documents for these keywords. The lessons are interdisciplinary in order to maximize students' ability to transfer their learning and to make connections across content areas. Designing instruction in this way also helps educators cover the curriculum more efficiently. With children's literature serving as mentor texts, lesson extensions often address educational technology standards. If the resources are available, educators and students can use electronic webbing and other thinking tools when appropriate. Depending on the needs and proficiency levels of students, all written work can be keyboarded or presented electronically, and all artwork can be created using applicable software. The curriculum standards suggested are not exclusive; educators may certainly add to them when appropriate.

The implementation or process section of the lesson plans is guided by the essential elements of instruction, also known as the Madeline Hunter model (Hunter 1994), a process recommended for today's students by Schmoker (2011, 57). The lessons begin by offering motivation for participating in the learning engagement. Student-friendly objectives are listed next and should be posted for students and educators to refer to during the lesson. The presentation components of the lesson are what the educators do to model and prepare students to practice the reading comprehension strategy. If the presentation includes opportunities for student participation, a list of student participation procedures is provided; these too can be posted for students' and educators' reference. If the lesson moves from presentation to guided practice, there is a list of student practice procedures that should be posted. The guided practice specifies what educators pay attention to as they monitor students' work. The lesson closure includes student sharing or a review of the strategy and an assessment. The reflection is offered in the form of questions that can be posted and responded to orally or in writing. Possible extensions to the lesson conclude the format. Because all lesson plans are guides rather than prescriptions, educators are advised to modify and adapt lesson procedures to fit the needs of students, the curriculum, and their own teaching styles.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR ENGLISH LANGUAGE LEARNERS

As schools welcome more and more English language learners (ELLs), school librarians and classroom teachers must consider these students' needs as they carefully plan and implement instruction. Across the United States, school districts, state departments of education, and colleges of education are recognizing the necessity of providing practicing and preservice educators with tools that help students acquire and learn English. The sheltered instruction approach is one model that has gained widespread use (Echevarria, Vogt, and Short 2008). In elementary schools where classroom teachers are responsible for instruction in all areas of the curriculum, language arts objectives are often integrated into every lesson. If ELLs are members of the classroom community, then ELL language arts standards must be integrated into each lesson as well. As educators learn to articulate and plan language objectives clearly, they are advised to collaborate with colleagues who are trained in sheltered instruction or other English language teaching and learning approaches.

All of the reading comprehension strategies highlighted in this book are specified in the sheltered English instruction approach. Basing lessons on published standards, clearly stating content and language objectives orally and in writing, and posting participation and practice procedures offer procedural support for ELLs. Teaching strategies that use think-alouds

and modeling explicitly are cornerstones of the sheltered approach. For ELLs who must simultaneously learn language and content, graphic organizers offer important instructional scaffolds that help them organize information. Educators can modify the provided graphic organizers to meet the needs of ELLs by embedding concept definitions or elaborations that further explain the content. These strategies and methods are important for all learners, but they are imperative for ELLs.

MAXIMIZING YOUR IMPACT

There is no better way to promote the teaching role of the school librarian and the importance of the school library program than to document how classroom-library collaboration impacts student outcomes. Coteaching the how-to lessons in this book is one place to begin. Collecting pre- and post-lesson data, gathering and assessing student products, and sharing these results with administrators, other classroom teacher colleagues, and parents help educate the stakeholders in the learning community about the value of classroom-library collaboration. The goal of teaching reading comprehension strategies is to give readers the tools they need to be effective readers and independent learners. Unlike Trisha in *Thank You, Mr. Falker*, they will no longer watch each other's heads in search of reading magic. Instead, students will understand the reading process from the inside out.

Reading Comprehension Strategy One

Activating or Building Background Knowledge

When I was young in the mountains, I never wanted to go to the ocean, and I never wanted to go to the desert. I never wanted to go anywhere else in the world, for I was in the mountains. And that was always enough.

—From *When I Was Young in the Mountains*, by Cynthia Rylant, illustrated by Diane Goode

COLLABORATIVE TEACHING IN THE AGE OF ACCOUNTABILITY

MAXIMIZING YOUR IMPACT

- » **Strategy One: Activating or Building Background Knowledge**
- » Strategy Two: *Using Sensory Images*
- » Strategy Three: *Questioning*
- » Strategy Four: *Making Predictions and Inferences*
- » Strategy Five: *Determining Main Ideas*
- » Strategy Six: *Using Fix-up Options*
- » Strategy Seven: *Synthesizing*

Before we open a book, link to a website, or sit down in a movie theater or in front of the TV, our adult minds begin to activate what we already know, think, or believe about the topic of the literacy event we are about to enter. We developed this skill over the course of many years of meeting and greeting new experiences. Our brains seek out patterns; our thinking involves making connections. Understanding the importance of background knowledge to comprehension is critical because we connect new information with prior knowledge before we integrate and organize the new information. Like the elephant's tail, background knowledge is always behind us backing up our comprehension. It is the sum of the prior experiences we bring to each new encounter with text.

Rosenblatt (1978) developed a theory of reading as a transaction among the reader, the text, and the intention of the author. She posited that each reader brings his own feelings, personality, and experiences to the text and that each reader is different each time he revisits a particular text. Background knowledge is what the reader brings to the reading event. Each reader's interpretation and each reading of the text are potentially unique. This theory helps explain our individual responses to literature, art, and music and can be applied more broadly to our generalized responses in all areas of learning.

As we go through life meeting and revisiting ideas and information, we organize our understandings into schemas. According McGee and

Richgels, a schema is a “mental structure in which we store all the information we know about people, places, objects, or activities” (1996, 5). If we have no schema for a particular topic, we begin that encounter with an immediate loss of comprehension, as the following incident clearly shows.

WHAT’S A GRAND CANYON?

After months of preparation and anticipation, the children waited enthusiastically for the writing prompt for their annual state-mandated writing assessment. The classroom teacher opened the booklet and read aloud to her students: “Write a story about the day you took a pack mule trip into the Grand Canyon.”

In this Tucson, Arizona, elementary school 350 miles from the Grand Canyon and 60 miles from the Mexican border, twenty-eight wiggling eight-year-old arms flew into the air. “Teacher, teacher,” they called out in unison. “What’s a Grand Canyon?”

The third-grade students attending this elementary school had never seen a photograph of the Grand Canyon, much less visited it. Only one student said she had ridden a mule, but when the teacher translated that word to *burro* at least half the class reported having had that experience. In short, these children had no schemas to support their writing on this topic.

The Tucson students did not have contextual background because they had never visited the Grand Canyon, and they did not have decontextualized book knowledge because they had not yet read a book or viewed a film about the place or the experience of riding a mule down its steep slopes.

Educators cannot assume that students have prior experiences with any school-based domains. Introducing lessons and units of study with brainstorms and questions about what prior ideas and information children possess on particular topics is an essential component of lesson design. To find a firm starting point for student learning, educators often utilize

K-W-L charts, or some variation of this tool, to help the class or individual students assess their background knowledge. If students have the necessary schemas, they have support for leaping into the learning experience. If they do not yet have a schema, then it is up to educators to help them build background knowledge. Extending the K-W-L chart allows for the possibility that educators need to help students build their background knowledge:

- *Build* background.
- What do we already *know*?
- What do we *wonder* about?
- What did we *learn*?
- What are our new *questions*?

This B-K-W-L-Q chart, based on the work of Janet Allen (2004), also acknowledges that inquiring is a dynamic process that can generate as many questions as it answers.

We can also think of background knowledge as learned understandings about specific domains. Background knowledge becomes part of what some researchers call “crystallized intelligence.” This type of intelligence is associated with facts, generalizations, and principles. “The strong correlation between crystallized intelligence and academic achievement helps to explain the strong relationship between background knowledge (or ‘prior knowledge’ in some studies) and achievement” (Marzano 2003, 134).

By explicitly modeling and practicing prior knowledge assessment, educators can help students develop procedures for assessing their background knowledge before they begin explorations into new learning territories. They can help children determine what they already know or if they need to build their background knowledge before they begin. They can also provide students with background knowledge as a means of demonstrating the critical importance of these understandings to comprehension. When explicitly taught, this strategy provides children with both the rationale and the experience of utilizing background knowledge to support effective reading.

HOW TO TEACH THE STRATEGY

We store memories and much of our learning in story format because the brain functions narratively. Children often share their knowledge and experiences in story form (Christie, Enz, and Vukelich 2003, 57). In the process of activating background knowledge, students engage in storytelling that builds connections.

When teaching background knowledge strategy lessons, educators focus on modeling the many ways that making connections before, during, and after reading supports meaning-making. Educators should let students know what ideas come into their minds before beginning to read a book or other resource. Sharing background knowledge during the reading requires that educators stop and reflect; this helps students understand that reading is a complex, nonlinear process that goes beyond the literal denotations of the words on the page. After reading, sharing connections helps readers access the messages and themes suggested by the text. Educators should be specific in sharing how their background knowledge helped them comprehend the text and encourage students to be specific as well. Figure 3-1 shows a sample of how to model making connections before, during, and after reading a story.

CONNECTION TYPES

Keene and Zimmermann (1997) suggest that readers make three types of connections: text-to-self, text-to-text, and text-to-world. Readers can use each of these frames to identify the source of their prior knowledge connections. These frames also provide ways to think and talk about books and help readers build schemas. After educators practice metacognition by thinking aloud and sharing their connections orally, they can use these questions to engage students in making their own connections and thinking about how connections help them comprehend texts.

As with all the strategies, young readers should ultimately internalize these questions and utilize them

as a means of exploring the ways they are connecting to what they read, hear, and view. We know that connections help us remember what we read. Connections also give value to literacy events in which we engage. Building connections not only supports comprehension, it enriches our literate lives by giving deeper significance to literacy experiences.

TEXT-TO-SELF CONNECTIONS

Text-to-self connections require that educators know the children in their care and be familiar with students' home lives and local communities. Classroom teachers often bring a deeper knowledge of individual students to the classroom-library collaboration. School librarians often bring a broader knowledge of resources available in the school library, through interlibrary loan, and by way of the Web. Through collaboration, educators can connect children's background knowledge with a rich array of children's literature and resources.

When modeling text-to-self connections with think-alouds, educators can pose and answer questions to share their thinking processes. These sample questions center on text-to-self connections:

- Have you ever felt like the character(s) in this story? Describe what happened and how you felt.
- Have you had a similar experience? Compare your experience to that of the character(s).
- Have you heard or read this information before? What does this information mean to you?
- How does connecting a story or information to your own life experiences help you understand it better?

TEXT-TO-TEXT CONNECTIONS

When educators make effective connections between children's home and school lives, and as children build their school-based background knowledge, learners can be guided to make connections between texts. In a broad sense, a text can be any communication from

Fig. 3-1 Making Text-to-Self, Text-to-Text, and Text-to-World Connections

Text: *A Ballet for Martha: Making Appalachian Spring*, by Jan Greenberg and Sandra Jordan, illustrated by Brian Floca

Before Reading

Making Connections	How Connections Support Comprehension
<p>From reading the book title and looking at the cover, I know this book is going to be about a ballet. I am not sure who Martha is, but someone or some people made this ballet for her. I have seen <i>The Nutcracker</i> ballet. I know it takes a great deal of work to put on a ballet performance: costumes, music, and dancers who dance in unison. (Text-to-self)</p> <p>I know that Appalachia is a rural mountainous part of the country. I have been in the mountains in spring when wildflowers are blooming. It's pretty. (Text-to-self)</p>	<p>Since I have experience attending a ballet, I understand that a ballet requires more than dancers alone. I think that my background knowledge will help me understand this book.</p> <p>I think I will learn how this ballet was created. I think the title of the ballet is <i>Appalachian Spring</i>. Since I know a little bit about Appalachia, I may have some understanding of the setting for the ballet.</p> <p>These connections help me get ready to enter the story and learn more.</p>

During Reading

Making Connections	How Connections Support Comprehension
<p>I can relate to Martha Graham's experience of writing and rewriting. I have to do that with my work, too. (Text-to-self)</p> <p>I have read a picture book based on the Shaker song that inspired Aaron Copeland when he was composing the music for the ballet. The book is called <i>Simple Gifts</i> by Chris Raschka. (Text-to-text)</p> <p>The set designer Isamu Noguchi created a simple stage scene and props to reflect Graham's dancing style. The dance, the music, and the set must work together just like players on my basketball team. (Text-to-self)</p>	<p>These connections help me think about how each person contributed her or his individual talent and expertise to make the ballet exceptional. They could not have achieved this work alone.</p> <p>This helps me get into the story, understand the artists' collaboration, and connect their experiences with things that I know about from my own life.</p>

After Reading

Making Connections	How Connections Support Comprehension
<p>One of the big ideas in this book is collaboration. In order to cocreate this ballet, a choreographer, a composer, and a set designer worked together. In this case, each one was from a different cultural background.</p> <p>I think that people can accomplish more when they work together. This is true in many different aspects of life, from art to school projects to working with others to make the world a better place (Text-to-world)</p>	<p>These thoughts remind me that people from different cultures can and should share ideas and work together.</p> <p>These connections help me understand the message of the story. I think the author wanted readers to know that sometimes great art is even greater because people pooled their talents. I agree with this idea.</p>

which a person makes meaning. This includes all forms of paper-based documents as well as oral communication, visual images, and electronic resources. This view of a text offers learners a wide range of possible sources for making connections. When children begin to notice commonalities between texts situated both inside and outside of school, they may begin to find more relevance in their school-based learning experiences.

The following sample questions center on making text-to-text connections:

- Have you ever read another book or seen a movie in which the characters have feelings or experiences similar to the ones in this story? Describe how they are the same.
- Have you ever read another book or seen a movie in which a story element (setting, plot, conflict, theme, or style) is similar to the one in this story? Describe how they are the same.
- Have you read another book or seen a movie in which the writer used language similar to that in this story? Describe how these texts are similar.
- How does making connections to familiar texts help you comprehend the new text?

TEXT-TO-WORLD CONNECTIONS

With text-to-world connections, readers stretch their thinking beyond the particulars of what they read, hear, and view to connect story themes with larger life issues. These topics often include social and political problems related to historical or current events.

For instance, before reading *Fly Away Home* (Bunting/Himler), educators can share a current newspaper article about homelessness. During the reading, educators and students can compare the situations and issues in the story to those in the article or to other experiences or information related to this social problem. During or after the reading, some students may make connections to homeless people they have seen or to news broadcasts or other newspaper articles on this topic.

When students make intertextual connections such as these, they are beginning to explore using literacy as a tool for forming opinions about social and political issues. Readers can grow to understand that authors and illustrators create for purposes that may include messages or perspectives on world events. The author's intention, part of Rosenblatt's reading transaction, should be one ingredient of the meaning made by the reader.

These are some questions that can be used to guide educators' or students' thinking as they practice making text-to-world connections:

- What do you think the author's message or purpose was in writing this story or presenting this information?
- Did the author suggest a message that connects with bigger ideas about the way things are in the world? What do you already know about these issues?
- What do you think was the author's opinion or perspective on the big ideas in this text? Do you agree? Why or why not?
- How does making connections to larger issues help you comprehend this text?

MAKING LITERATURE CONNECTIONS

Books of all genres that relate to students' life experiences provide fertile soil for background knowledge strategy lessons. Students can quickly learn to make connections to books whose story elements, topics, authors, or illustrators are familiar to them. School-based events are a place to begin because they represent shared experiences. Characters, settings, and plots may be particularly strong in readers' connections to these texts. Branching out from school stories to students' home and community experiences is a natural progression, one that requires educators to know their students well. With practice, students begin to make their own text connections

spontaneously, and the educators learn even more about their students' schemas.

Connections to the immediate or regional community also provide effective support for building prior knowledge. Historical events and monuments, national parks and forests, museums, and landmarks can make particularly powerful connections, especially if students can take actual or virtual field trips to these locations before, during, or after reading about them. Initial practice at assessing background knowledge is successful when readers find relevance and familiarity in their texts. Students can then build on these successes as they advance as readers, and they more easily recognize when their loss of comprehension is related to a lack of background knowledge.

Informational books on topics in children's areas of interest and expertise provide effective support for background knowledge strategy lessons. Working in partnerships, educators can model this strategy effectively with texts that relate to their own areas of interest and expertise. Students who have a passion for dogs, dump trucks, or deep-sea diving quickly see the process of activating background knowledge as one in which they are already engaged when they select a new book on their favorite subject. For supporting this connection during independent reading, it is important to guide the student to the "right"

book, a longtime charge of classroom teachers and school librarians alike. Informational books are a rich resource for practicing this strategy.

Text sets developed by educators are another powerful support for students who are learning to build background knowledge and make connections (Short, Harste, with Burke 1996). Text sets of five to fifteen or more books can be organized around topics, genres, story elements, structural patterns, story variants, and author-illustrator studies. Figure 3-2 shows a variety of possible concepts around which educators can build text sets.

Supported by text sets, author-illustrator studies can invite making connections that result from building a repertoire of prior knowledge with the characters, settings, plots, themes, and styles found in literature created for children. Just like adult readers, young readers often choose books on the basis of their previous experiences with an author's or illustrator's work. When engaging in whole-class author-illustrator studies, educators model making connections among story elements and share how these connections increase their enjoyment as well as their understanding of the texts. Author-illustrator studies also help readers develop reading preferences, an important foundation for lifelong reading.

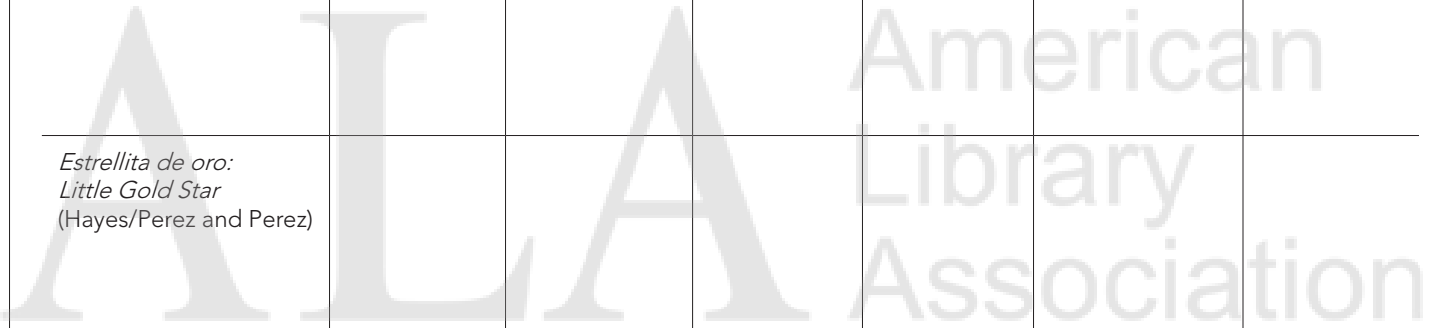
Figure 3-3 shows a category matrix that can be completed while engaging with a story-variant text

Fig. 3-2 Conceptual Frameworks for Organizing Text Sets

Concept	Examples
Topics	Content-area topics such as weather (science), Civil War (history), measurement (mathematics)
Genres	Biographies, poetry, science fiction, mysteries
Story Elements	Similar settings, characters, plots and conflicts, themes, cultural features, illustration media or styles
Story Structures	Cumulative and patterned language stories, fables, myths
Story Variants	Fairy-tale and folktale variants, such as Cinderella stories
Author and Illustrator Studies	Multiple works by the same author or illustrator

Fig. 3-3 Cinderella Variant Category Matrix

Title, Author, Illustrator	Setting	Characters	Plot	Cultural Features	Illustrations	Theme
<i>Cendrillon: A Caribbean Cinderella</i> (San Souci/Pinkney)						
<i>Cinderella</i> (Perrault/Jeffers/Ehrlich)						
<i>The Egyptian Cinderella</i> (Climo/Heller)						
<i>Estrellita de oro: Little Gold Star</i> (Hayes/Perez and Perez)						
<i>Mufaro's Beautiful Daughters: An African Tale</i> (Steptoe)						
<i>Sootface: An Ojibwa Cinderella Story</i> (San Souci/San Souci)						
<i>Yeh-Shen: A Cinderella Story from China</i> (Louie/Young)						



set. Using one of the variants, the school librarian and classroom teacher can model completing each category on the basis of information found in the print as well as in the illustrations. Students can continue the study by reading the other variants in small groups and taking responsibility for contributing an entry in each category. (Color coding the categories facilitates cross-text comparisons. For example, all students' contributions in the setting category could be recorded on green paper.) The completed matrix provides a rich resource to support readers as they compare the various story elements in these books.

Using text sets selected by educators, students can be guided to make connections—with the ultimate goal of creating their own text sets based on self-selected topics, text types, and themes. The Thematic Text Set for this chapter, available as a web extra, is an annotated text set built on a theme of cultural interactions. It includes both picture books and novels from a wide variety of genres including biography, historical and realistic fiction, informational books, and poetry. Developed through classroom-library collaboration, text sets of all types provide rich resources for background knowledge strategy lessons.

CHILDREN'S LITERATURE CITED

Starred titles are used in the lesson plans.

- **Amber on the Mountain*, by Tony Johnston, illustrated by Robert Duncan
- A Ballet for Martha: Making Appalachian Spring*, by Jan Greenberg and Sandra Jordan, illustrated by Brian Floca
- Cendrillon: A Caribbean Cinderella*, by Robert D. San Souci, illustrated by Brian Pinkney
- Cinderella*, by Charles Perrault, retold by Amy Ehrlich, illustrated by Susan Jeffers
- The Egyptian Cinderella*, by Shirley Climo, illustrated by Ruth Heller
- Estrellita de oro: Little Gold Star*, by Joe Hayes, illustrated by Gloria Osuna Perez and Lucia Angela Perez
- Fly Away Home*, by Eve Bunting, illustrated by Ronald Himler

**Froggy Goes to School*, by Jonathan London, illustrated by Frank Remkiewicz

**Look Out Kindergarten, Here I Come!* by Nancy Carlson

Mufaro's Beautiful Daughters: An African Tale, by John Steptoe

**My Name Is Yoon*, by Helen Recorvits, illustrated by Gabi Swiatkowska

Simple Gifts: A Shaker Hymn, by Chris Raschka

**Sing Down the Rain*, by Judi Moreillon, illustrated by Michael Chiago

Sootface: An Ojibwa Cinderella Story, by Robert D. San Souci, illustrated by Daniel San Souci

When I Was Young in the Mountains, by Cynthia Rylant, illustrated by Diane Goode

Yeh-Shen: A Cinderella Story from China, by Ai-Ling Louie, illustrated by Ed Young

LESSON PLANS

In the following how-to lessons, educators use think-aloud strategies to demonstrate how and why they are accessing and assessing their background knowledge and how they are using it to comprehend new texts before, during, and after the reading. The lessons are constructed for students at three levels of development. Readers at all levels can benefit from how-to lessons until these reading strategies are integrated into their repertoires as reading skills. The organization of instruction in the lessons maximizes the benefit of coteaching by lowering the student-teacher ratio.

Each lesson utilizes a different type of connection to demonstrate this strategy: text-to-self, text-to-text, and text-to-world. Although it is recommended that strategy lessons focus on one connection framework at a time, readers should not be limited in making a particular type of connection; these examples simply share one dominant connection framework. Whether the text is assigned or read by the student independent of school, the ultimate goal of these lessons is for readers at all levels of development to learn to notice when they need to connect or to build background knowledge before, during, or after reading.

LESSON PLAN 3.1

Reading Comprehension Strategy One

Using Background Knowledge

Reading Development Level: Emerging

Instructional Strategies

Cues and Questions, Classifying, and Comparing

Lesson Length

1 session

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to use background knowledge to make connections between excited and nervous feelings and experiences that children have before and on the first day of school.

Objectives

After reading *Look Out Kindergarten, Here I Come!* or *Froggy Goes to School*, students will be able to

1. Classify ideas about the main character's feelings and experiences on a category web.
2. Identify and record text-to-self comparisons on a Venn diagram.
3. Use prior knowledge to make text-to-self connections as they respond to literature orally, through art, or in writing.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Look Out Kindergarten, Here I Come! by Nancy Carlson

Froggy Goes to School, by Jonathan London, illustrated by Frank Remkiewicz

Graphic organizers: 3.1 Category Web, 3.1 Venn Diagram, 3.1 Text-to-Self Connections Rubric

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

The school librarian works with half the class; the classroom teacher works with the other half. Each group hears a read-aloud and records their understandings of the main character's feelings and experiences on a class-size category web. After each educator models using a class-size Venn diagram, students compare their own experiences to that of the book character on individual Venn diagrams.

Assessment

Students' Venn diagrams show their ability to identify similarities and differences. Students' contributions to the class-size category web and their oral, artistic, or written responses can be assessed using a rubric. In all cases, the educators are looking for the students' proficiency at making text-to-self connections.

Standards

Reading keywords: describe characters; compare or relate literary text to their own experience; respond

Listening and speaking keywords: use effective vocabulary and logical organization to relate or summarize ideas

Fine arts keyword: illustrate

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Use prior and background knowledge as context for new learning. (1.1.2)
- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
- Connect ideas to own interests and previous knowledge and experience. (4.1.5)

PROCESS

MOTIVATION

Cues and Questions: Before reading, ask student to think back to the night before school started this year. What did you think about the first day of school? Were you scared to meet your new classmates and classroom teacher? Were you excited to see your friends from last year? What were your expectations for the new school year?

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Classify ideas on a category web.
2. Record text-to-self comparisons on a Venn diagram.
3. Tell, write, or draw a response.

PRESENTATION

Read the title and the author's and illustrator's names on the book jacket. Ask students what they think the book may be about. Examine the expressions on the characters' faces. Is this how students felt on their first day of school? Students think-pair-share.

Cue: As we read, notice how the main character feels and what happens to him on the first day of school.

Read: *Look Out Kindergarten, Here I Come!* or *Froggy Goes to School* from beginning to end.

Reread the story. During the reading, think aloud about how the main character is feeling. What are the clues in the text? What do the illustrations tell us about how he is feeling? Review the types of notes

shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Model by recording at least one feeling and one experience on a class-size 3.1 Category Web.

Show the 3.1 Text-to-Self Connections Rubric and talk about student participation on the category web. Students share their ideas. Educators record students' ideas in notemaking format on the category web.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Raise a hand to pause the reading.
2. Name the category (feelings or experiences).
3. Tell your idea.

GUIDED PRACTICE

The goal is for each student in the half-class group to contribute at least one idea to the category web. Record students' names in parentheses beside their ideas.

PRESENTATION

Using think-alouds, model completing a class-size 3.1 Venn Diagram while comparing the educator's own feelings and experiences to those of the main character. (Remember: It is important to record parallel ideas on both sides of a Venn diagram. For instance, record a feeling on one side and a feeling on the other.) Record both feelings and experiences. Refer to the rubric.

The students share orally with a partner before recording ideas on a Venn diagram.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Think-pair-share feelings and experiences.
2. Write "same" ideas in the middle of the Venn diagram.
3. Write "different" ideas on either side.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Monitor partners for sharing both feelings and experiences and correct use of individual Venn diagrams.

PRESENTATION

Bring the two groups together. Each educator models making text-to-self connections in a response to the book. Ideally, one educator tells and writes his response, and one tells and draws his response. (Example: Henry was excited about going to kindergarten. I was excited and scared too.) Review the rubric.

Students write and illustrate a sentence or two.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Talk with partner.
2. Write a sentence.
3. Illustrate the sentence.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Monitor students' discussions and writing. Educators can take dictation from students who share their sentences orally.

CLOSURE

Students can share their sentences and illustrations in half-class groups with the educators facilitating. Students self-assess using the text-to-self connections rubric. The educators utilize the same rubric for assessment.

REFLECTION

How did text-to-self connections help readers comprehend the feelings and experiences of these characters? When we connect our own experiences to those of the characters, do we feel part of the story? How does that change our experience of the story?

EXTENSION

Students can dramatize their responses with small skits. They can work in like or dissimilar feelings or experiences groups. Audiences can create word clouds to show their comprehension of the skits.



LESSON PLAN 3.2

Reading Comprehension Strategy One

Using Background Knowledge

Reading Development Level: Advancing

Instructional Strategies

Cues and Questions, Classifying, and Comparing

Lesson Length

3 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to use and to build background knowledge to make text-to-text connections between two books about characters who are learning to read and write.

Objectives

After reading *Amber on the Mountain* and *My Name Is Yoon*, students will be able to

1. Categorize their ideas about characters' literacy experiences using the five Ws and How.
2. Compare these two book characters' literacy experiences.
3. Make text-to-text connections as they respond to literature in writing and through drawing.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Amber on the Mountain, by Tony Johnston, illustrated by Robert Duncan

My Name Is Yoon, by Helen Recorvits, illustrated by Gabi Swiatkowska (two copies)

Graphic organizers: 3.2 Five Ws and How Category Matrix, 3.2 Text-to-Text Connections Rubric

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

While sharing one book, the educators model completing a category matrix, then divide the class in half. Each group compares the second text to the first after completing a category matrix about the new text.

Assessment

The students' contributions to the half-class category matrix show their ability to identify and categorize details of the story. They think-pair-share the connections between the texts. Students respond to one or both books by writing a paragraph. Their text-to-text connections are assessed using a rubric. In all cases, educators look for the students' proficiency at making text-to-text connections.

Standards

Reading keywords: describe characters (e.g., traits, roles, similarities) within a literary selection; compare and contrast; comprehension; respond; story elements

Listening and speaking keywords: effective vocabulary; follow multistep directions; prepare and deliver information by generating topics and organizing ideas

Fine arts keyword: illustrate

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Use prior and background knowledge as context for new learning. (1.1.2)
- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
- Connect ideas to own interests and previous knowledge and experience. (4.1.5)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Questions: Activate prior knowledge. Students think-pair-share as the educators ask questions: “Think back to how you first learned to read and to write. Who were the people who helped you? What tools did you use? Were you at home or in school? How old were you? What made you want to learn to read or write? How did you do it?”

Cues: Read the title and the author’s and illustrator’s names on the book jacket of *Amber on the Mountain*. Ask students to think-pair-share what they think the book may be about. Tell students: “As we read, notice how the main character feels and what happens to her as she learns to read and write.” Review the five Ws and How and the categories for thinking about the story elements, then ask students to listen for these ideas during the reading.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Listen for the five Ws and How.
2. Categorize ideas.

PRESENTATION

Read *Amber on the Mountain*. One educator rereads the book while the other records information on a class-size 3.2 Five Ws and How Category Matrix.

During the second reading, both educators use think-alouds to model how they identify information in the story that corresponds to the categories (questions) on the matrix. Review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Solicit student input regarding the appropriate category for each note on the class-size category matrix.

CLOSURE

After the reading, review the information recorded on the category matrix. Project the 3.2 Text-to-Text Connections Rubric and discuss criteria for assessment.

DAY 2

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVE

1. Categorize ideas using the five Ws and How.

PRESENTATION

Divide the class in half. Both educators read and reread *My Name Is Yoon*. Remind students to listen for the five Ws and How. If appropriate, use think-alouds to model the process of gathering and recording information on a class-size 3.2 Five Ws and How Category Matrix.

The students offer ideas during the second reading while the educator records notes on the class-size category matrix.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Raise hand to pause the reading.
2. Identify the category and the share idea.

GUIDED PRACTICE

The goal is for each student in the half-class group to contribute at least one idea to the category matrix. Record students' names with their ideas.

CLOSURE

To review, ask students to think-pair-share connections between the characters' feelings and experiences in both books. Ask for volunteers to share a few ideas.

DAY 3

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Compare two book characters' experiences.
2. Write a paragraph with text-to-text connections.
3. Illustrate the paragraph.

PRESENTATION

Bring the two groups together. Put the new category matrices based on *My Name Is Yoon* side by side with the original *Amber on the Mountain* matrix. Remind students that they will be writing a paragraph comparing these two characters' feelings and experiences.

The educators take turns reading by category from the matrices. Involve students in making text-to-text connections. Use one color marker to circle similarities and another color to circle differences between the characters' experiences.

Educators provide an oral example of a possible paragraph. (If necessary, provide a written model by facilitating a shared writing.)

Brainstorm possible illustrations for this paragraph. Review the 3.2 Text-to-Text Connections Rubric.

Students use the matrices as prewriting. They compose paragraphs, participate in writing conferences, and illustrate their paragraphs.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Read through the matrices and the rubric.
2. Write a three- to five-sentence paragraph with one, two, three, or more text-to-text connections.
3. Conference with an adult or classmate.
4. Illustrate the paragraph.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators conference with individual students. They monitor students' ability to write about text-to-text connections.

CLOSURE

Form an inside-outside circle. Students take turns reading their paragraphs to a partner and sharing their illustrations. Rotate and repeat.

Students use the rubric to self-assess their text-to-text connections.

REFLECTION

How did text-to-text connections help readers comprehend the feelings of the main characters in these two stories? Are there other books or movies we have read or seen that share how the characters learned to read and write?

EXTENSIONS

Educators or students create a thematic text set that focuses on literacy learning. Publish it to the Web. Ask students to choose books from the text set and complete their own category matrices. Ask students to respond to these texts using a variety of sign systems, including writing, art, drama, music, and mathematics. (A mathematical representation for *Amber on the Mountain* could be represented in print or illustration: Friendship + Books = Learning to Read and Write.) Involve students in literature circles or engage them in discussions about how making text-to-text connections helps readers comprehend characters' experiences.

LESSON PLAN 3.3

Reading Comprehension Strategy One

Building Background Knowledge

Reading Development Level: Advanced

Instructional Strategies

Cues and Questions, Classifying, Notemaking and Summarizing, and Comparing

Lesson Length

3 or 4 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to provide background knowledge to prepare students to read about an unfamiliar cultural tradition and to make text-to-world connections between the worldviews suggested by these traditional practices and those of present-day U.S. mainstream culture.

Objectives

After they have researched and performed a choral reading of *Sing Down the Rain*, students will be able to

1. Identify the need for background knowledge.
2. Make notes from websites and print resources.
3. Use the background knowledge they gathered to understand new text.
4. Develop fluency through the practice and performance of a choral reading.
5. Identify which information helped them better comprehend the narrative poem.
6. Analyze and compare the cultural practices and ecological view of traditional Tohono O'odham culture with present-day U.S. mainstream culture.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Sing Down the Rain, by Judi Moreillon, illustrated by Michael Chiago

Choral Reading Transcript: <http://storytrail.com/pages/choral.pdf> (Make a class set of reader's theater scripts for the choral reading.)

Tohono O'odham Pathfinder: <http://storytrail.com/pages/TTPathfinder.html>

Graphic organizers: 3.3 Teacher Resource: Category Web, 3.3 Category Web, 3.3 Teacher Resource: Notemaking Graphic Organizer, 3.3 Notemaking Graphic Organizer, 3.3 Teacher Resource: Bibliography Graphic Organizer, 3.3 Bibliography Graphic Organizer, 3.3 Notemaking and Bibliography Graphic Organizer Rubric, 3.3 Teacher Resource: Venn Diagram, 3.3 Venn Diagram

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators work with the entire class. Both educators support students as they conduct research and practice and perform a choral reading of the reader's theater script. At the end of the study, the educators facilitate a text-to-world discussion centered on culture and ecology.

Assessment

Students' notemaking and bibliography graphic organizers can be assessed using the notemaking and bibliography rubric. The completed category web shows what the students learned through their research and performance of the choral reading. The Venn diagram shows their ability to compare two cultures.

Standards

Reading keywords: use graphic organizers to clarify the meaning of text; use context to determine the meaning of words; use reference sources to determine the meaning of words; develop vocabulary in context; describe the historical and cultural aspects found in cross-cultural works of literature; fluency

Science keywords: ecology; describe the interaction between human populations and the environment

Social studies keywords: describe the different perspectives of Native American tribes; human cultures; locate information using a variety of resources; research skills

Educational technology keywords: technology research skills

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Use prior and background knowledge as context for new learning. (1.1.2)
- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
- Connect ideas to own interests and previous knowledge and experience. (4.1.5)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Cues and Questions: Define ecology as the relationships among plants, animals, people, and the environment. What are students' connections to the concept of ecology? (Examples: recycling, planting trees, rescuing injured animals.) Describe the different kinds of relationships people have with the earth and with other organisms. Briefly discuss what students already know, if anything, about traditional Native American cultural views on the relationships among people, land, plants, and animals.

Teach or review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Prompt students as the class fills in a class-size 3.3 Category Web about the Tohono O'odham. Speculate as to why students know little or nothing about these people, who are indigenous to

*Excerpted from *Standards for the 21st-Century Learner* by the American Association of School Librarians, a division of the American Library Association, copyright © 2007 American Library Association. Available for download at www.ala.org/aasl/standards. Used with permission.

the U.S. Southwest and northern Mexico. Let students know that, before they read and perform a narrative poem about a Tohono O’odham annual tradition, they will conduct research to build their background knowledge in order to increase their comprehension of traditional Tohono O’odham culture and the poem.

To give students an idea about their lack of background knowledge, show students “The Saguaro Fruit Harvest” linked from the Tohono O’odham Pathfinder.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVE

1. Identify the need for background knowledge.

PRESENTATION

Review the initial category web. Ask: “Do we have enough background knowledge about the Tohono O’odham to understand a narrative poem that describes their annual rainmaking ceremony?” Conduct a book walk through *Sing Down the Rain*. Ask students what they notice in the illustrations. Generate and record students’ questions. Ask: “Where might we find the answers?”

The educators project and share the Tohono O’odham Pathfinder. Using the narrator’s beginning stanzas, model thinking aloud about vocabulary and concepts to research (see the 3.3 Teacher Resource: Notemaking Graphic Organizer). Identify and circle or highlight the unknown words and concepts in the beginning stanzas.

CLOSURE

Review the process; read and circle unknown words or concepts. Ask: “Where can we find information to help us understand these items?”

DAYS 2 AND 3

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Make notes from websites and print resources.
2. Use new background knowledge to understand new text.

PRESENTATION

Demonstrate searching, notemaking, recording reference numbers on a 3.3 Notemaking Graphic Organizer, and recording information on a 3.3 Bibliography Graphic Organizer (see the 3.3 Teacher Resource: Bibliography Graphic Organizer). In addition to websites linked to the Tohono O’odham Pathfinder, students can also use the book itself, the book’s cultural advisor’s notes, or other print resources.

Project the 3.3 Notemaking and Bibliography Graphic Organizer Rubric. Discuss criteria. Use the rubric to assess the educators’ examples.

Divide the students into “voice” groups based on the parts in the poem: narrator, clouds, saguaros, flowers, women, grandparents, medicine man, and headman. (Note: Voices are listed in order of their participation and in decreasing complexity.) The students collaborate on their notemaking.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Work in voice groups.
2. Identify and circle unknown vocabulary and concepts.
3. Use the Tohono O’odham Pathfinder to locate information and make notes.
4. Record resources used on the bibliography form.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' ability to identify the need for background information. They support students in researching, notemaking, and bibliography recording skills.

CLOSURE

Students meet in voice groups to discuss their notes. Let students know they will be practicing and performing the choral reading the next day.

DAY 4

MOTIVATION

Educators can bring in a text they do not understand and attempt to read it convincingly to students. Discuss this question: "Does comprehension help us read more effectively and expressively?"

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Practice and perform the choral reading.
2. Identify which information supports comprehension of narrative poem.
3. Analyze cultural practices and ecological view of traditional Tohono O'odham and compare with present-day U.S. mainstream culture.

PRESENTATION

The educators chorally read the first three stanzas of the poem with a focus on listening to one another and on fluency (pacing, expression, and flow).

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Listen to others while reading.
2. Find a pace that works for everyone in the group.
3. Read with expression.
4. Make it flow.

PERFORMANCE

Perform the choral reading.

PRESENTATION

After performing the choral reading, the educators model completing the third column of the 3.3 Teacher Resource: Notemaking Graphic Organizer as a reference. Both educators identify how background knowledge helped them comprehend a particular part of the poem or the entire poem. Project the rubric and review the criteria.

Project the 3.3 Category Web. As a class, record an example in each category. (Use ideas from the 3.3 Teacher Resource: Category Web.) Students work with their voice groups to complete the notemaking sheet, to self-assess, and to fill out the category web.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Work with voice group.
2. Complete the third column of the notemaking sheet.
3. Use the rubric to self-assess notemaking and bibliography graphic organizers.

4. Complete an individual category web.
5. Contribute to a small-group Venn diagram.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' completion of the graphic organizers.

PRESENTATION

Project the 3.3 Teacher Resource: Category Web. Compare students' ideas to those on this example.

CLOSURE

Educators project the Tohono O'odham Ecology Web found on the Tohono O'odham Pathfinder and invite students to discuss it.

Using a class-size 3.3 Venn Diagram, educators model identifying similarities and differences between traditional Tohono O'odham culture and modern-day practices. (The 3.3 Teacher Resource: Venn Diagram is a completed Venn diagram.)

Students discuss similarities and differences in their voice groups and complete a group Venn diagram.

Lead a whole-class discussion and add to the class-size Venn diagram. Ask: "How does the ecological view of traditional Tohono O'odham culture compare with present-day U.S. mainstream culture? What questions do we have?"

REFLECTION

How do we recognize the need for background information? When we need it, where can we get background information? How does background information help us comprehend text? Why is it important to compare new information with prior knowledge?

EXTENSION

Students can generate questions based on the discussion of culture and ecological worldviews. They can conduct further study on the ecological views of another people, which can culminate in a learning project: nonlinguistic representation, poem, dramatization, print or electronic report, or presentation using an appropriate Web 2.0 tool.

Reading Comprehension Strategy Two

Using Sensory Images

The ocean is an old, old man born at the beginning of time. He breathes a loud, salty breath, and his beard blows white on the sandy beach. Fish swim in his long wavy hair.

—From *See the Ocean*, by Estelle Condra, illustrated by Linda Crockett-Blassingame

COLLABORATIVE TEACHING IN THE AGE OF ACCOUNTABILITY

MAXIMIZING YOUR IMPACT

- » **Strategy One: Activating or Building Background Knowledge**
- » **Strategy Two: Using Sensory Images**
- » Strategy Three: Questioning
- » Strategy Four: Making Predictions and Inferences
- » Strategy Five: Determining Main Ideas
- » Strategy Six: Using Fix-up Options
- » Strategy Seven: Synthesizing

We first learn about the world through our senses. A newborn's skin responds to temperature, her eyes to light, her ears to the sound of her mother's voice, and her nose to her mother's scent. Her hungry mouth opens for nourishment and expresses a preference for the taste of her own mother's milk. Over time, babies gradually learn to distinguish one sense from the other and use their senses to explore and "make sense" of their surroundings.

Sensory experiences are a significant aspect of our background knowledge. Sensory imagery is an important part of our schemas. When we think about our sensory experiences, we are creating representations of those experiences in our memories (Marzano 2004, 35). In fact, our most powerful memories are attached to sensory experiences. A smell or a taste can trigger a long-cherished recollection—bread baking in the oven in grandma's kitchen, the damp earth that signals rebirth in nature each spring. The metaphor of the elephant's ears reminds us that we can tap into all of our senses, not just our sense of sight, as we read. When we bring our sensory knowledge to the reading of a text, we are the directors of the movie that plays inside our heads. The movies we create as we read are richer if they include a variety of sensory details.

Does the bombardment of visual information in 21st-century Western society diminish students' ability to imagine? Sousa (2005) notes that electronic technology provides many images for students,

which makes visualization more difficult for them. Like underused muscles, students' ability to use their imaginations is being reduced by the lack of opportunity. It is particularly important for educators to teach students to visualize by the time they are ready to read or listen to chapter books without illustrations. Readers transitioning to nonillustrated texts must be ready to apply their own imaginations and what they have learned through their experiences with visual media and other sensory input in order to create mental pictures and sensory images for characters, settings, and plots as well as information presented in texts.

Classroom teachers and school librarians can emphasize sensory experiences in read-aloud lessons in both the classroom and the library. Reinforcing these experiences supports students' understanding of the significance of their senses in literacy, in learning, in memory and recall, and in life. Learning engagements that focus students' attention on each sense singly help them develop their ability to identify and use each sense to improve comprehension. Young children associate senses with the sense organ that receives the input, such as eyes for sight. As students become more sophisticated in utilizing their senses, sensory imagery can be combined to show how the senses work together to enhance our understanding and enjoyment of text.

As educators collaborate to plan, implement, and assess sensory-focused lessons, it is essential that they take into account students' individual differences. Some children may not have typical eyesight or hearing. As a result, they may have developed keen sensory ability in another category. Some children may not have the mobility to engage in a variety of kinesthetic experiences; instead of touch, another sense may more fully capture sensory input for them. Classroom teachers' assessment of individual student needs is a critical component of the knowledge they bring to the collaboration. Lessons must be modified or adapted and must be presented in such a way that all learners are given opportunities for sensory development in order to achieve comprehension.

Gardner's (1993) theory of multiple intelligences reminds us that people learn best in different ways.

Some learners have diverse and strongly developed proficiencies for learning that emphasize one or more of their senses. Students with visual-spatial, musical, and body-kinesthetic intelligences may utilize their senses of sight, hearing, or touch spontaneously as they make meaning with text. One of the research-based instructional strategies recommended by Marzano, Pickering, and Pollock (2001) is nonlinguistic representation. Generating mental pictures, drawing pictures and pictographs, and engaging in kinesthetic activities are brain-compatible strategies. As support for linguistic representations, they help learners connect both hemispheres of the brain.

HOW TO TEACH THE STRATEGY

As children learn to connect sensory experience with language, each sense can pose unique challenges. It is not easy, for example, to describe a smell without referring to taste. In fact, we often describe our sensory experiences in relation to other senses (Ackerman 1990). Writers use literary devices, such as similes and metaphors, to help shape our sensory experience of text, to help us make connections between our senses and language; understanding and creating metaphors underlie one of the research-based instructional strategies highlighted in this book. Many picture book authors offer readers powerful similes that connect sensory experiences to a particular time period, landscape, culture, or emotion with which they may be unfamiliar. Figure 4-1 offers some similes that show how picture book authors use sensory comparisons to help readers make meaning.

The simple technique of adding aural components to read-alouds is one way to engage children's senses: a train whistle dramatizes *Train Song* (Siebert/Wimmer), a jingle bell enhances *The Polar Express* (Van Allsburg). Educators who understand the role of listener participation in read-alouds can add rhymes and songs to enrich the written text. For example, the perennial *Carrot Seed* (Krauss/Johnson) can be extended by adding a song (search the Web for

Fig. 4-1 Similes That Compare Different Senses

Hearing with Sight

"Our barelegged mammas dance down the steps and join us in the fresh, clean rain . . . while the music from Miz Glick's phonograph shimmies and sparkles and streaks like night lightning." From *Come On, Rain!* by Karen Hesse, illustrated by Jon J. Muth

Taste with Touch

"Juicy, golden peaches, honey-sweet, like a gentle caress on the palm of my hand." From *Gathering the Sun: An Alphabet in Spanish and in English*, by Alma Flor Ada, illustrated by Simón Silva

Hearing with Sight

"[Abuelita] always says the words should be as round as dimes and as wild as blossoms blooming." From *My Abuelita*, by Tony Johnston, illustrated by Yuyi Morales

"Carrot Seed Song"). Finger plays and kinesthetic movement activities involve touch. Augmenting stories by inviting children to manipulate props such as flannel boards and puppets appeals to the sense of touch as well as sight. Educators can find support for engaging students in this way in resources such as *Storytelling with Puppets* (Champlin 1998).

Many informational books, especially those published in the past decade, engage readers with vivid language as well as high-interest visuals. Science concept titles by Vicki Cobb, Laurence Pringle, Sandra Markle, Seymour Simon, and others can be used to help students visualize information. Susan Campbell Bartoletti, Russell Freedman, Jim Murphy, and Diane Stanley use rich descriptions and dramatic action in their biographies and books on social studies topics. School librarians can support the curriculum and the use of sensory imagery in particular through the selection and integration of such high-quality informational resources.

Inviting students into sensory experiences prompted by literacy engagements helps them deepen their comprehension as well as appreciate and learn the writer's craft of using language to involve the senses in the reading process. Educators must share their own experience of using their senses before, during, and after reading. The think-aloud strategy in figure 4-2 describes a classroom teacher and school librarian collaborating to demonstrate the effective use of sensory images to achieve comprehension.

MAKING LITERATURE CONNECTIONS

To help students fully develop each sense, educators can design lessons that focus on individual senses. In *Sense-Abilities: Fun Ways to Explore the Senses*, O'Brien-Palmer (1998) offers a series of natural science learning experiences focused on each sense. Each section of the book begins with a piggyback song about one sense as well as a bibliography of fifteen or so sense-focused children's books. In *Touch the Poem*, poet Arnold Adoff and illustrator Lisa Desimini present seasonal sensory poems and visual images from a child's point of view. Books like these provide educators with an enjoyable way to bring together sensory experiences, science concepts, and literature.

Working in collaboration, educators can collect resources, such as those reviewed below, for lessons focused on each sense. Figure 4-3 shows a collection of Jack Prelutsky's poems from *The New Kid on the Block*. Each of these poems appeals to an individual sense. The poet's lively language helps listeners and readers imagine the characters, settings, and events presented in these poems. Students can be asked to identify the sensory focus and to create single-sense or multisensory poems of their own.

SIGHT

Our eyes tend to monopolize our senses. Readers can use their visual memory to create mental images. Guided visualizations like "Rock to Rock" in *Keepers*

Fig. 4-2 Sensory Imagery Literacy Engagement

Text excerpts from *See the Ocean*, by Estelle Condra, illustrated by Linda Crockett-Blassingame

Before Reading: Connecting to Prior Sensory Knowledge

Play ocean music softly. Read the title of the book. Ask the students to close their eyes and take a minute to imagine the sights, sounds, tastes, textures, and smells of the ocean. When they open their eyes, brainstorm as many ocean sensory images as possible. The educators can begin the brainstorm and can continue to contribute as the brainstorm builds. Input should be recorded with different colors, one for each sense: sight, hearing, taste, touch, and smell.

During Reading: Activating Sensory Images

One educator reads; one closes her eyes. The students also close their eyes during the readings of the three passages. Listeners imagine the ocean during the readings.

"The ocean is an old, old man born at the beginning of time. He breathes a loud, salty breath, and his beard blows white on the sandy beach. Fish swim in his long wavy hair. On his head he wears a crown of pearls. On his feet he wears shoes of shells."

The listening educator shares her images and connections with the students. Example:

I now live in the desert and grew up in the Midwest, far from the ocean. When the author wrote about how the ocean is an old man, a metaphor, she made it easier for me to imagine the ocean in my mind's eye. Although I have visited the ocean, I have more background knowledge of the images she shares of the old man and of the senses suggested by the words in this passage than I do of the ocean itself.

I could imagine an old man's long white beard and how the waves that touch the shore are white. I have smelled salty breath. I'm thinking of my husband's breath after he's eaten popcorn or pickles. I could see the fish in my mind's eye, swimming up and down along the waves, waves like the old man's hair. It was fun to imagine the ocean as an old man with a crown of pearls on his head and shoes made from shells on his feet.

"Sometimes the wind blows his hair about in big wild waves. Then he gets angry, and he roars and hisses and spits. When the sun shines, he laughs and gurgles and prattles in the rock pools. He smiles a wide silver and green smile on the beach. On his shoulders he carries ships and boats."

The listening educator shares her images and connections with the students. Example:

The idea of the ocean changing conditions like people change their moods made sense to me. This helps me understand that the ocean is always changing. The words *gurgles* and *prattles* are onomatopoeia, words that make sounds. These words helped me hear the water in the rock pools.

"But at night he's more beautiful than ever. At night he wears a dark, silvery gray cloak with moons and stars sprinkled upon it. Every night before he goes to sleep, he pulls a soft, misty blanket over himself."

The listening educator shares her images and connections with the students. Example:

The final image was very beautiful. I am familiar with the moon and stars in the sky, and I could easily imagine the old man wearing them like a wizard's moon-and-stars cloak. The blanket of mist image wasn't as strong for me. I haven't seen mist very often in my life.

After Reading: Reflection

The listening educator shares her images and connections with the students. Example:

I think the author, who uses the voice of the young girl in the story to describe the ocean in this way, gave me connections to sensory images that helped me experience the ocean more powerfully. I could picture the ocean because I could relate it to things with which I am familiar, such as an old man, salty breath, and a wizard's cloak. Picturing the ocean in my mind made these passages even more memorable to me. My visualization included sounds and smells as well as visual images. The author's figurative language made the ocean come alive for me. Her words created a memorable and beautiful movie in my mind.

of the Earth: Native American Stories and Environmental Activities for Children (Caduto and Bruchac/Fadden and Wood), which invites students to visualize the rock cycle, are essential activities for teaching this strategy. Although texts with descriptive language and sensory imagery for which students have background knowledge are the easiest to visualize, educators can guide students as they practice this strategy with almost any text. Inviting students to close their eyes and imagine the text as it is read aloud, and then asking them to share the pictures in their heads, is the basic technique used to teach visualization.

Along with this practice, it is important to help students comprehend the impact of visuals on meaning-making. Educators should take full advantage of the richness and sophistication of illustration in children's picture books by focusing on the visual information and aesthetic experiences these titles provide. Conducting illustrator studies or studies based on the media used in a selection of texts can focus students' attention on the visual feast offered by these books. Although it seems almost criminal to read aloud these highly illustrated books without sharing the artwork, educators can use this technique to prompt story listeners to compare the scenes they imagine in their minds with the illustrators' interpretations of the authors' words.

Wordless books provide one especially strong vehicle for visual literacy studies. A search of the

library catalog using the keyword "wordless" or a subject search of "stories without words" yields a selection of titles, some of them quite sophisticated. One such book is *A Circle of Friends* (Carmi). In this story, a young boy's act of kindness toward a homeless man comes full circle. As the story unfolds, author-illustrator Giora Carmi uses color to spotlight the new or critical story element on each page. Readers can use the visual information in this and other wordless books to create print to accompany the artwork and thereby demonstrate that pictures do indeed tell a story.

HEARING

Many children's books appeal to a listener's sense of hearing. The most important thing about these titles is that they must be read aloud; they must be heard to be appreciated. This makes them perfect selections for the think-aloud strategies used in teaching reading comprehension strategies.

Poetry, which is written to be spoken, is a key genre for exploring how sound shapes our understanding. Rhythm and rhyme are two literary devices that poets use to engage listeners. From a very early age, children respond to regular rhythms in language. Perhaps this harkens back to our first experiences of hearing the rhythmic lub-dub of our mothers' heartbeats. The popularity of Shel Silverstein's and Jack Prelutsky's work is a testimony to young people's

Fig. 4-3 Sensory Poetry Classification Matrix

Sight	Hearing	Taste	Smell	Touch
"My Dog, He Is an Ugly Dog"	"Louder Than a Clap of Thunder!"	"Jellyfish Stew"	"Drumpp the Grump"	"I've Got an Itch"
"The Zoosher"	"I've Got an Incredible Headache"	"Yubbazubbies"	"Be Glad Your Nose Is on Your Face"	"Super-Goopy Glue"
"Baloney Belly Billy"	"Floradora Doe"	"Gussie's Greasy Spoon"		"Suzanna Socked Me Sunday"
"Forty Performing Bananas"	"Happy Birthday, Dear Dragon"	"When Tillie Ate the Chili"		
		"I'd Never Eat a Beet"		
		"I'd Never Dine on Dinosaurs"		

Poems from *The New Kid on the Block*, by Jack Prelutsky

preference for rhyming poems. Educators who share poetry or prose with rhyming lines can invite students to supply the rhyming words at the ends of lines to show how the poet-author's word choice supports prediction. A search of the subject heading "stories in rhyme" yields hundreds of possibilities, including time-honored titles by Dr. Seuss and Bill Martin Jr.

Attention to poets' and authors' use of another literary device, onomatopoeia, demonstrates how words like *chirp*, *growl*, *tinkle*, and *rumble* invite readers to use sound to make meaning. Picture books like *Achoo! Bang! Crash! A Noisy Alphabet* (MacDonald) illustrate the effects of sound-making language on meaning. Texts with onomatopoeia make smashing read-alouds because these words embed drama in the print. *Snip Snap! What's That?* (Bergman/Maland) and *Clickety Clack* (Spence/Spengler) are examples that include repetition that encourages listeners to participate in the sounds of language that enhance meaning. *Using Picture Story Books to Teach Literary Devices* (Hall 2007) is one professional resource for identifying picture books that support teaching onomatopoeia as well as other literary devices.

The relationship between poetry and music is undeniable. "Music speaks to us so powerfully that many musicians and theorists think it may be an actual language, one that developed about the same time as speech" (Ackerman 1990, 209). For many of us, our first songs were nursery rhymes set to music. *Hush Songs: African American Lullabies* (Thomas/Joysmith) is a collection of nursery rhymes and songs that brings the home and community culture into the literacy learning classroom. Similar resources in languages other than English, such as *Pío Peep! Traditional Spanish Nursery Rhymes* (Ada and Campoy/Escrivá), reflect the cultural and linguistic heritages of many students.

Combining song and poetry, *Take Me Out of the Bathtub, and Other Silly Dilly Songs* and *I'm Still Here in the Bathtub: Brand New Silly Dilly Songs* (Katz/Catrow) are collections of humorous poetry that piggyback on well-known tunes to support readers' performance of the poems. Traditional songs have been published with the work of various illustrators and have even spawned variants such as *She'll Be Comin'*

'Round the Mountain (Sturges/Wolff), in which "she" is a bookmobile-driving librarian. Another example is *Over in the Garden* (Ward/Spengler), which adapts the original song's setting and the selection of mother and offspring characters from a meadow environment to the garden. Being able to sing along as they read supports young readers' comprehension; these texts are particularly effective for children learning a second language (Jackman 1997).

TOUCH

There are books that must be touched! The raised spider's web on the pages of Eric Carle's *The Very Busy Spider* helps readers comprehend the single-minded focus of an arachnid whose friends attempt to divert her from her spinning task. After students make and play with *oobleck*, they understand the threat posed by this sticky stuff falling like rain from the sky in *Bartholomew and the Oobleck* (Seuss). A book like *The Goat in the Rug* (Blood and Martin/Parker) demands that an educator supply young readers with opportunities to feel the textures of raw wool, yarn, and finished rugs.

Movement is another way for educators to appeal to the sense of touch. In addition to puppets and finger plays, hand clapping to rhymes and gesturing during reading increase readers' engagement with text. For instance, before reading a fictional or informational text about a butterfly, lead the students in a kinesthetic experience to learn the parts of a butterfly's body by involving them with a piggyback version of "Head, Shoulders, Knees, and Toes":

The Butterfly

Head and thorax

Abdomen, abdomen

Head and thorax

Abdomen, abdomen

Eyes and wings

And antennae and proboscis

Head and thorax

Abdomen, abdomen

If educators wonder about the potential of physical response to engage children, they need only spend

a few minutes on the playground during recess watching children joyfully and effortlessly perform hand and jump rope rhymes. The advancing lesson offered in this chapter uses a kinesthetic experience to increase comprehension and recall.

TASTE AND SMELL

Some books just beg to be tasted. For decades, educators have been serving *Green Eggs and Ham* and *Scrambled Eggs Super!* (Seuss), and these learning experiences have lingered long in students' literacy memories. More recently published, *Bee-bim Bop!* (Park/Lee) and *How to Make an Apple Pie and See the World* (Priceman) are two books that include recipes so readers can make and taste the delights described within the text before, during, or after the reading. Showing a turnip with the top still on and tasting it before reading *The Turnip: An Old Russian Folktale* (Morgan) or one of its variants can deepen readers' comprehension.

Educators can also make connections between taste and culture. Books such as *Everybody Cooks Rice* and *Everybody Brings Noodles* (Dooley/Thornton) can be used as springboards to similarities and differences in cuisine that help students understand a variety of cultures. For example, children can taste and smell rice or noodles spiced with Indian curry or Japanese soy sauce before reading picture books, folktales, or informational texts about those cultures. Best of all, families can be invited to prepare and share dishes that teach students about the diverse tastes, customs, and cultures of their classmates.

Using smell to achieve comprehension is arguably the most difficult skill to teach. Readers can bake bread with the Little Red Hen or bake cookies before reading *The Doorbell Rang* (Hutchins) to combine smell and taste. They can seek support in the natural environment for smells. This requires educators to be spontaneous and prepared for the teachable moment. Educators can open the classroom or library windows when it's drizzling to smell the wetness while reading about rain and spring.

As students become more proficient and sophisticated at using sensory imagery, combining two or more

senses in a lesson can be a next step. Our eyes contain 70 percent of the body's sensory receptors, so we take in more information visually than through any of the other senses (Wolfe 2001, 152). Still, visual imagery is not enough for reaching deep comprehension. The visualization process can be significantly enriched by involving all five senses in mental re-creations of texts. For instance, visual imagery alone provides an incomplete picture of a Civil War soldier's experience in battle. Readers who can also imagine the taste of fear in the soldier's mouth, hear the anguished cries of fallen comrades and horses, feel the trembling of his fingers on a Springfield musket, and smell acrid gunpowder have achieved a "lived-through" experience. Such a reader no longer stands outside the text but has entered into it and participated in the action along with the characters.

CHILDREN'S LITERATURE CITED

Starred titles are used in the lesson plans.

SIGHT AND MULTISENSORY

The Carrot Seed, by Ruth Krauss, illustrated by Crockett Johnson

A Circle of Friends, by Giora Carmi

Come On, Rain! by Karen Hesse, illustrated by Jon J. Muth

Gathering the Sun: An Alphabet in Spanish and in English, by Alma Flor Ada, illustrated by Simón Silva

**Hello Ocean*, by Pamela Muñoz Ryan, illustrated by Mark Astrella

**The Important Book*, by Margaret Wise Brown, illustrated by Leonard Weisgard

Keepers of the Earth: Native American Stories and Environmental Activities for Children, by Michael J. Caduto and Joseph Bruchac, illustrated by John Kahionhes Fadden and Carol Wood

My Abuelita, by Tony Johnston, illustrated by Yuyi Morales

The New Kid on the Block, by Jack Prelutsky

**Owl Moon*, by Jane Yolen, illustrated by John Schoenherr

See the Ocean, by Estelle Condra, illustrated by Linda Crockett-Blassingame

Touch the Poem, by Arnold Adoff, illustrated by Lisa Desimini

**Until I Saw the Sea: A Collection of Seashore Poems*, by Alison Shaw

**Water Dance*, by Thomas Locker

HEARING

Achoo! Bang! Crash! A Noisy Alphabet, by Ross MacDonald

Clickety Clack, by Rob and Amy Spence, illustrated by Margaret Spengler

Hush Songs: African American Lullabies, by Joyce Carol Thomas, illustrated by Brenda Joysmith

I'm Still Here in the Bathtub: Brand New Silly Dilly Songs, by Alan Katz, illustrated by David Catrow

Over in the Garden, by Jennifer Ward, illustrated by Kenneth Spengler

Pío Peep! Traditional Spanish Nursery Rhymes, by Alma Flor Ada and F. Isabel Campoy, eds., English adaptations by Alice Schertle, illustrated by Viví Escrivá

The Polar Express, by Chris Van Allsburg

She'll Be Comin' 'Round the Mountain, by Philemon Sturges, illustrated by Ashley Wolff

Snip Snap! What's That? by Mara Bergman, illustrated by Nick Maland

Take Me Out of the Bathtub, and Other Silly Dilly Songs, by Alan Katz, illustrated by David Catrow

Train Song, by Diane Siebert, illustrated by Michael Wimmer

The Treasure of Ghostwood Gully: A Southwest Mystery, by Marcia Vaughan, illustrated by Will Terry

TOUCH

Bartholomew and the Oobleck, by Dr. Seuss

The Goat in the Rug, as told to Charles L. Blood and Martin Link by Geraldine, illustrated by Nancy Winslow Parker

The Very Busy Spider, by Eric Carle

TASTE AND SMELL

Bee-bim Bop! by Linda Sue Park, illustrated by Ho Baek Lee

The Doorbell Rang, by Pat Hutchins

Everybody Brings Noodles, by Norah Dooley, illustrated by Peter J. Thornton

Everybody Cooks Rice, by Norah Dooley, illustrated by Peter J. Thornton

Green Eggs and Ham, by Dr. Seuss

How to Make an Apple Pie and See the World, by Marjorie Priceman

Scrambled Eggs Super! by Dr. Seuss

The Turnip: An Old Russian Folktale, by Pierr Morgan

LESSON PLANS

In these how-to lessons, educators use think-aloud strategies to demonstrate how and why they are using their senses to comprehend new texts before, during, and after reading. All three lessons use poetry or poetic prose to heighten readers' sensory experiences of text. Each lesson includes a writing component. When educators cofacilitate students' guided practice, they can more easily manage writing conferences. Lowering the student-teacher ratio and providing students with individual feedback can significantly improve students' writing.

LESSON PLAN 4.1

Reading Comprehension Strategy Two

Using Sensory Images

Reading Development Level: Emerging

Instructional Strategy

Classifying

Lesson Length

2 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to describe the impact of the senses on students' imagined experience and comprehension of a day at the ocean.

Objectives

After reading *Hello Ocean* and hearing poems from *Until I Saw the Sea: A Collection of Seashore Poems*, students will be able to

1. Classify sensory images by the sense organ and sense used for that experience.
2. Utilize background knowledge and the category matrix to compose a group poem and compose and illustrate an individual list poem about a day at the ocean.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Hello Ocean, by Pam Muñoz Ryan, illustrated by Mark Astrella

Until I Saw the Sea: A Collection of Seashore Poems, by Allison Shaw

Text set on the topic of oceans and beaches for browsing

Graphic organizers: 4.1 Category Matrix, 4.1 Sensory List Poem Graphic Organizer, 4.1 Sensory List Poem and Illustration Rubric

4.1 Materials for Sensory Centers and drawing materials

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators share the responsibility for organizing and facilitating the sensory input experiential centers. When presenting the book, one educator reads while the other records notes on the category matrix. Educators facilitate shared writing of group poems and monitor and conference with students on their individual poem writing and self-assessment.

Assessment

Students' poetry demonstrates their understanding of sensory images and the use of these images to comprehend and compose text. Students illustrate their poems. Students and educators assess the poems and illustrations with the poem rubric.

Standards

Reading keywords: story elements (setting); comprehend; respond

Writing keywords: expressive writing; expressive or descriptive phrases and short sentences

Listening and speaking keywords: effectively listen and speak; use effective vocabulary

Fine arts keyword: illustrate

Science keywords: five senses and their related body parts; compare common objects using multiple senses

Technology keywords (extension): keyboard; illustrate; publish

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Use the writing process, media and visual literacy, and technology skills to create products that express new understandings. (2.1.6)
- Respond to literature and creative expressions of ideas in various formats and genres. (4.1.3)
- Use creative and artistic formats to express personal learning. (4.1.8)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Name the five sense organs: eyes, ears, fingers/skin, nose, and tongue/mouth. (This is the order used in *Hello Ocean*.) Divide the students into five groups. Rotate students through five sensory centers. (The 4.1 Materials for Sensory Centers is a list of sensory center materials.) Let them know they will be using their senses to explore things related to the ocean. Ask the students to describe what they see, hear, feel, smell, and taste to their group members as they cycle through each center.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Use all five senses.
2. Classify sensory images.

PRESENTATION

Bring the group together to hear *Hello Ocean*. Play ocean music softly during the reading. One educator and the students close their eyes and visualize during the reading. The other educator reads the book in sections by sense without showing the illustrations. The listening educator shares her visualization of the beach scenes with a focus on sensory details.

*Excerpted from *Standards for the 21st-Century Learner* by the American Association of School Librarians, a division of the American Library Association, copyright © 2007 American Library Association. Available for download at www.ala.org/aasl/standards. Used with permission.

One educator rereads each section, focusing on each sense while asking students to identify notes for a class-size 4.1 Category Matrix: see/eyes, hear/ears, touch/skin, smell/nose, and taste/tongue. Ask students to think-pair-share their visualizations with a partner. Then ask for student volunteers to share with the class. The other educator records the students' ideas on the group matrix, using a different color marker for each sense. Collaborate to include sensory adjectives.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Think-pair-share.
2. Raise hand to share with the class.
3. Tell which sense and color marker should be used to record information on the matrix.

CLOSURE

One educator rereads the entire book to the class and shares the illustrations. Play ocean music while rereading.

Note: Make a second copy of the group category matrix for day 2.

DAY 2

MOTIVATION

Play ocean music and read selections from *Until I Saw the Sea: A Collection of Seashore Poems*. Ask the students to use all their senses as they listen. Share the illustration after reading each poem. Let the student poets know they will be using the matrix to compose a group poem and an individual poem. They will illustrate their individual poems. Review the class-size 4.1 Category Matrix. Are there sensory details and adjectives that can be added?

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Share ideas for a group poem.
2. Write an individual poem and an illustration about a day at the ocean.
3. Use the rubric to self-assess the poem and the illustration.

PRESENTATION

Divide the class in half. Using the group category matrix as a word wall, each half of the class works with one educator to compose a group poem. Use the 4.1 Sensory List Poem Graphic Organizer.

Bring the whole class together to share the two group poems. Project the 4.1 Sensory List Poem and Illustration Rubric and assess the group poems. Brainstorm ideas for illustrations that match the group poems.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Compose an ocean or beach poem using the poem graphic organizer.
2. Conference with a teacher.
3. Illustrate the poem.
4. Self-assess the illustration using the rubric.
5. Read books from the ocean text set.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor the poets' work. They ask the students how they are incorporating sensory imagery in their poems and remind them to use the rubric to guide their writing. When a student completes her poem, she conferences with an educator in order to self-assess with support, and then she independently illustrates her poem and self-assesses the illustration. The educators utilize the same rubric for assessment.

CLOSURE

Bring the class together. Ask for volunteers to share their poems. Ask students to close their eyes as volunteers read their poems, with or without teacher support. Ask students to identify the strongest sense in each poem by whispering their answers to a neighbor. Students who have completed an illustration can share it after classmates have had the opportunity to visualize.

REFLECTION

Which senses did we use in this lesson? How did sensory images help us visualize the ocean? How did the sensory images help us understand spending a day at the ocean?

EXTENSIONS

Students' poems and illustrations can be compiled into a class poetry anthology, or provide them with an electronic template of the 4.1 Sensory List Poem Graphic Organizer so they can keyboard their poems. Students can also utilize a computer drawing program to create illustrations or create an electronic book or web page. Students can also create list or shape poems and publish poetry collections about any topic.

LESSON PLAN 4.2

Reading Comprehension Strategy Two

Using Sensory Images

Reading Development Level: Advancing

Instructional Strategies

Cues, Cooperative Learning, and Nonlinguistic Representation

Lesson Length

1 session

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to use sensory imagery and body-kinesthetic movement to learn, remember, and draw the water cycle.

Objectives

After reading *Water Dance*, students will be able to

1. Recall the sequence of the water cycle as depicted in the book.
2. Draw a diagram (nonlinguistic representation) of the water cycle.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Water Dance, by Thomas Locker

Graphic organizers: 4.2 Student Sample: Completed Water Cycle, 4.2 Water Cycle Checklist and Rubric

4.2 Hand Movements for Water Dance, by Thomas Locker

Materials: 11-by-14-inch sheet of white construction paper folded lightly into quadrants (or marked lightly with a pencil) for each student, one blue crayon for each student, crayons of other colors, environmental CD with rain and thunder sounds

Optional: Web 2.0 tool such as Cadoo.com for online drawing or Glogster.com for a water cycle poster on which students can also record a podcast of their retelling

Collaboration

While one educator reads the book, the other makes hand movements to “illustrate” the water cycle. Both educators model recalling the sequence of the text. Educators monitor students as they work in pairs to recall the water cycle and create individual nonlinguistic representations of the cycle.

Assessment

The students' paper or digital nonlinguistic representations can be self-assessed and educator-assessed using a checklist and rubric.

Standards

Reading keywords: restate facts; sequence; comprehend; respond

Listening and speaking keywords: effectively listen and speak; use effective vocabulary

Fine arts keyword: illustrate

Science keywords: water cycle; rain; water; weather; organize data; diagram

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Assess the quality and effectiveness of the learning product. (3.4.2)
- Respond to literature and creative expressions of ideas in various formats and genres. (4.1.3)
- Use creative and artistic formats to express personal learning. (4.1.8)

PROCESS

MOTIVATION

Cues: Tell the students they will be learning about the water cycle. Let students know they will be using their senses to visualize. Review the senses. To help them think about the way they experience rain through their senses, play an environmental CD that includes rain and thunder sounds. Ask students to close their eyes and use all their senses to imagine a rain storm. After the piece, each educator shares an example of one sensory image he visualized during this engagement. Ask students to think-pair-share one image with a partner. Ask for volunteers to share with the entire class.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Tell the water cycle in sequence.
2. Draw a diagram of the water cycle.

PRESENTATION

One educator reads *Water Dance* while the other produces the hand movements for the students to follow. (Follow the 4.2 Hand Movements for Water Dance, by Thomas Locker.) Repeat the hand movements in cumulative fashion after each new page.

At the end of the reading, ask students to visualize the text or their own personal experiences with rain and water as they repeat the cycle, along with the educators, using the hand movements only, without speaking or without viewing the illustrations.

The educators use the think-aloud process to model recalling the water cycle. They repeat the cycle verbally and with hand movements, supporting each other's ability to recall. The educators tell which sense they used most as they visualized the water cycle.

Replicate the students' individual papers by making a large rectangle with lightly marked quadrants on the board or digital tool screen. Beginning in the high-noon position and proceeding clockwise, educators model illustrating the water cycle on the board (see the 4.2 Student Sample: Completed Water Cycle). Use blue marker/chalk until the end of the cycle; use more colors when adding a sun and a rainbow. Think aloud while planning the illustration. Repeat the hand movements to support recalling the water cycle sequence and invite students to do so as well.

Project the 4.2 Water Cycle Checklist and Rubric. As a whole class, assess the educators' nonlinguistic representation of the water cycle. Note: Final question on the checklist: Which of your senses helped you most in recalling the water cycle?

Depending on the proficiency of the students, the educators may erase their nonlinguistic representation to give students the opportunity to use only the hand movements and their memories. Students work with a partner as support for recalling the water cycle. Distribute one piece of construction paper and one blue crayon to each student, or provide Internet access for digital drawing.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Help your partner recall the cycle.
2. Illustrate the water cycle using a blue crayon.
3. Check your work with the checklist.
4. Raise your hand to request other crayons for the sun and rainbow.
5. Self-assess with the rubric.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' recall of the cycle as well as their execution of the illustrations. They make sure students are planning their illustrations. To keep students focused on sensory images, educators can also question students about which senses they are using as they draw. Educators monitor students' work in progress and suggest revisions if necessary before providing crayons for the sun and rainbow.

CLOSURE

Display the water cycle illustrations around the room or in the hallway. Ask students to turn to face a partner. As a class, chorally recall the water cycle using hand movements. Ask students to tell their partners which of their senses they used most as they retold the cycle.

REFLECTION

Which senses did we use to remember the water cycle? How did the hand movements, the illustrations in the book, and the images in our minds help us remember the water cycle? How can we use visualization to help us comprehend text?

EXTENSIONS

Students can add a title and label their nonlinguistic representations to convert them into scientific diagrams. Investigate why rain is important to the ecology of the earth. Use this lesson as an introduction for weather or other environmental science inquiry projects.

Continue to use sensory imagery to comprehend science and other concepts.

LESSON PLAN 4.3

Reading Comprehension Strategy Two

Using Sensory Images

Reading Development Level: Advanced

Instructional Strategies

Cues, Cooperative Learning, Metaphors (Similes), Notemaking (Quotes), and Summarizing

Lesson Length

2 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to read a fictional text, visualize, identify sensory imagery, and compose a persuasive paragraph.

Objectives

After reading *Owl Moon*, students will be able to

1. Utilize their senses to experience an (unfamiliar) event vicariously.
2. Identify and record the senses used by the characters.
3. Analyze the text for the author's use of figurative language.
4. Synthesize information in order to compose a persuasive paragraph that uses evidence and figurative language from the text.
5. Self-assess their persuasive paragraphs using a rubric.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Owl Moon, by Jane Yolen, illustrated by John Schoenherr (multiple copies for student partners)

www.owling.com

Graphic organizers: 4.3 Admit Slip, 4.3 Category Matrix, 4.3 Persuasive Paragraph Rubric,

4.3 Sample Persuasive Paragraph

Train whistle

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators work with the entire class to model the tasks. Educators support student partners as they read, visualize, and analyze a text. Educators conduct conferences to support students' individual persuasive paragraph writing.

Assessment

Category matrices are evaluated for completeness. The students' individual persuasive paragraphs are evaluated with a rubric.

Standards

Reading keywords: comprehend; vocabulary; determine the meaning of figurative language (similes)

Writing keywords: write persuasive text; paraphrase information; use literal and figurative language; use evidence from a text

Listening and speaking keywords: effectively listen and speak

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Use prior and background knowledge as context for new learning. (1.1.2)
- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
- Respond to literature and creative expressions of ideas in various formats and genres. (4.1.3)
- For extension: Use creative and artistic formats to express personal learning. (4.1.8)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Cues: Play a recording of the call of an owl from the multimedia section of Owling.com. Distribute one copy of the 4.3 Admit Slip to each student. (Put students into teams of two to prepare for partner reading during the guided practice.) Project the admit slip and conduct a shared reading of this informational text about owling. Review the five senses. In *Owl Moon*, the characters use three senses: sight, hearing, and touch. On the admit slip, each student records a prediction about which sense the characters in the story will use most as they search for an owl on a winter night and why they think that.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Read *Owl Moon* with a partner.
2. Identify and use tally marks to record the senses used by the characters.
3. Identify and quote similes and metaphors that relate to each sense.

PRESENTATION

Educators use the similes on the first page of the story to review figurative language: “trees stood like giant statues” (sight) and “a train whistle blew, long and low, like a sad, sad song” (hearing). Determine the dominant sense in each simile. Convert each example into a metaphor: “The trees were giant statues” and “The long and low train whistle was a sad, sad song.” The author uses similes and metaphors to help readers comprehend the owling experience. How does figurative language impact the reader’s sensory experience of the text?

Project the 4.3 Category Matrix. Distribute one matrix to each team.

One educator reads while the other closes her eyes to visualize. Ask the students to close their eyes as well. The listeners' job is to imagine the events in the story in their minds. The adult reader begins by blowing a train whistle and reading the first page. After the first page is read, the students and the other educator open their eyes. The adult listener tells the reader what she visualized. Make tally marks for the sensory images used in the print and record similes and metaphors in quotation marks next to the dominant sense on the category matrix. Discuss the ethical use of ideas and information.

Read the print on the second double-page spread and repeat this process. Students continue reading and recording with their partners. Let the students know that their category matrix will be their prewriting for a persuasive essay.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Take turns reading one page at a time and listening/visualizing the story.
2. Take turns recording senses used by making tally marks.
3. Take turns recording simile/metaphor quotes on a shared graphic organizer.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' reading, visualizing, and record keeping. They also facilitate cooperative learning. (One way to ensure that partners are collaborating is to have each student use a different colored pen or pencil when recording on the graphic organizer.)

CLOSURE

Ask students to tally their marks for each sense. Share some of the similes and metaphors from the text. Let students know that in the next lesson they will be composing persuasive paragraphs.

DAY 2

MOTIVATION

What is the purpose of writing a persuasive paragraph? The audience for your paragraphs will be students in another class. They will hear the book *Owl Moon* and then vote for the most persuasive paragraphs related to the primary sense used in owling.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Compose a persuasive paragraph that uses evidence from the text and quoted or original figurative language.
2. Self-assess with the rubric.

PRESENTATION

Educators role-play a discussion of the predominant sense used in owling. Educators review the rubric with students and emphasize that evidence from the text is an important aspect of persuasive writing. They also mention that similes and metaphors can be used to strengthen an opinion. Writers can quote the author's figurative language or create similes and metaphors of their own. The educators share the 4.3 Sample Persuasive Paragraph and lead the class in assessing it using the 4.3 Persuasive Paragraph Rubric.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Review your category matrix.
2. Discuss the senses used in owling with your partner.
3. Compose an individual persuasive paragraph that uses evidence from the text and similes or metaphors to convince the reader that one sense is predominantly used in owling.
4. Self-assess the paragraph using the rubric.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' paragraph composition and conduct writing conferences as needed. They support students in completing their individual assessment rubric.

CLOSURE

Divide students into small groups and ask them to share their paragraphs. Vote as a class as to which sense is most important in owling. Conduct the reflection.

REFLECTION

How did closing our eyes help us visualize? What are some techniques writers use to help readers visualize? How does figurative language increase the effectiveness of sensory imagery? How can we use visualization to help us comprehend text?

EXTENSIONS

Collaborate with another teacher and classroom. Bring both classes together. Divide students into groups of eight (four students from each class). Project and read the 4.3 Admit Slip. Let students in the partner class know that, after hearing the book *Owl Moon*, they will listen to student-authored persuasive paragraphs related to which sense is most important when owling. Discuss the idea behind a persuasive paragraph. The students in the partner class decide which paragraph is most persuasive of the four shared in their group.

Students can compose poems. One possibility is to do this in the style of prose poems in *The Important Book* (Brown/Weisgard). Example: "The important thing about owling is you must . . . / When you go owling, you will see . . . / hear . . . / feel . . . / But the most important thing about owling is . . ." Students can illustrate their poems and publish a print or digital class book.

Reading Comprehension Strategy Three

Questioning

The secret to wisdom is to be curious—to take time to look closely, to use all your senses to see and touch and taste and smell and hear. To keep on wandering and wondering.

—From *The Wise Woman and Her Secret*, by Eve Merriam, illustrated by Linda Graves

COLLABORATIVE TEACHING IN THE AGE OF ACCOUNTABILITY

MAXIMIZING YOUR IMPACT

- » **Strategy One: Activating or Building Background Knowledge**
- » **Strategy Two: Using Sensory Images**
- » **Strategy Three: Questioning**
- » Strategy Four: *Making Predictions and Inferences*
- » Strategy Five: *Determining Main Ideas*
- » Strategy Six: *Using Fix-up Options*
- » Strategy Seven: *Synthesizing*

Although we first learn about our world nonlinguistically through our senses, once we have acquired a level of proficiency with language we continue constructing our knowledge by asking and answering questions. Young children go through a stage in this exploration when their speech is punctuated by question marks more often than by periods. They ask how? who? what? where? and when? and to every response from a more knowledgeable peer or adult, they ask the eternal question, why?

Questioning is among the social competencies that children bring with them to their schooling. But when they enter school, many children begin to think of questions in terms of answering the teacher's questions rather than asking and answering their own. "It is somewhat ironic that while parents will often complain about the number of questions that children expect them to answer, the opposite is true in schools. In schools, it is the teachers who ask the questions and children who are expected to provide the answers" (Whitebread 2000, 70).

As children progress through the grades, this phenomenon becomes even more pronounced. Teacher-initiated questions are usually asked after students are exposed to new information; they are less often used before or during students' encounters with texts. Teacher-initiated questions are most often at the knowledge level; they require only that students recall information. These questions are useful for fact

testing because they can for the most part be correctly answered by the “right” response.

The questioning required to deepen reading comprehension is significantly different in purpose and in application. When educators scaffold engagements with text by suggesting questions before, during, and after reading, they must keep in mind that the goal is for readers to ask and answer their own questions, a reading skill practiced unconsciously by proficient readers. For an excellent resource about stimulating curiosity and understanding questioning across the curriculum, see Koechlin and Zwaan (2006).

As we approach this investigation into using questioning strategies to teach reading comprehension, educators must remember that all questions are not alike. Educators must strive to support students’ thinking by modeling questioning that does not end with knowledge-level questions and answers. They must model questioning that stretches readers beyond the facts found “on the line” (in the print or illustrations), to think between the lines, to think through and beyond the text. Higher-level questions require that students analyze, synthesize, or evaluate information. School librarians will recognize that information literacy standards such as using information critically, competently, and creatively as well as achieving excellence in knowledge generation are effectively supported through higher-order questioning.

McKenzie (1997) identified eighteen different kinds of questions, including a category called “strategic questions,” which raise readers’ awareness of their own thinking. When educators model with think-aloud strategies, they reveal their own metacognition and use it as a tool for students to emulate. In this process, students learn that *how* one learns is as important as *what* one learns. Strategic questions posed throughout a reading and used for reflection at the end of a literacy experience help learners focus on learning how to learn.

Like the little girl Jenny who closely examines a coin in *The Wise Woman and Her Secret* (Merriam/Graves), readers can be encouraged to recapture the sense of wonder and curiosity of their early childhoods.

“Would you like to keep it?” Jenny asked.

“My dear child, it belongs to you.” The wise woman opened her hand and held the coin out to Jenny.

Jenny took the coin and held it close to her eyes the way the wise woman had. She peered at one side and then at the other. “Why,” she wondered aloud, “does it look green instead of copper-colored? And what are the Latin words? How do they fit into such a small place? What do the numbers mean? Why did they put the face on the coin? What kind of building is that on the other side?”

The wise woman laughed, and listened. “My dear child, you have found the secret . . . The secret of wisdom is to be curious.”

Educators can model and students can practice using the simple sentence starter “I wonder . . .” Questions that can be answered in the text, questions that require thinking or research beyond the text, and questions that seem to have no answers at all can invite the reader to enter into the story or informational source. Questions can frame the reader’s exploration. Questions awaken the mind.

The strategy highlighted in this chapter uses questioning the way elephants utilize their tusks to explore and probe their environment. The practice of asking and answering questions before, during, and after reading helps readers establish, develop, and maintain an internal conversation while engaging with text. In her Newbery Medal acceptance speech for *The Midwife’s Apprentice*, Karen Cushman remarked, “Writing for me is us feeding each other—writer and reader—fifty-four-year-old me and the young people who pick up my books. Me whispering in their ears and them talking back” (1996, 414). Questions support an internal dialogue between the reader and the author, the illustrator, or the text. Questioning keeps readers engaged. The metaphor of the elephant’s tusks

reminds readers to use questions to be active participants, rather than passive spectators, in the meaning-making process.

HOW TO TEACH THE STRATEGY

Researchers have found that cueing and questioning account for as much as 80 percent of what happens every day in a classroom. If this is true, then being conscious of how they use cues and questions can help educators improve their practice. After carefully selecting texts, educators can offer cues and questions as previews to what will be important in the literacy engagement. This helps students' minds begin to focus and prepare for the literacy event to come. This information is used to frame the listening or reading experience.

Educators are often skilled at using questions as cues to preview read-aloud selections. After reading the title and the author's and illustrator's names, adult readers usually ask questions to invite students to consider the meaning of the title, to make predictions based on the cover illustration, or to connect the story to listeners' background knowledge. Connections to personal experience or previously shared texts on this topic or theme or to other texts written or illustrated by this author or illustrator help prepare the listeners for what is to come (see chapter 3).

Introductory questioning is important but, as comprehension builds, asking questions during the reading is likely more important and more challenging to teach and to learn. Educators who have worked in preschool or primary grades may be familiar with the practice of *dialogic reading*. This strategy involves story readers asking story listeners both closed- and open-ended questions about the text during the reading. Closed-ended questions seek the "right" answer and can be answered with single words or phrases. (It is important that these questions not be answered with a simple "yes" or "no"; one of the goals of this strategy is to build vocabulary.) Open-ended questions have no right or wrong responses; they support children's language development because they invite elaboration

and engage the child in higher-level thinking (Christie, Enz, and Vukelich 2003). Engaging in questioning while reading helps children learn to think about print and illustrations in ways proficient readers think about them. Dialogic reading is designed for the one-on-one experience; the adult can follow the interests of individual children and provide them with immediate feedback. For more information on dialogic reading, see Arnold and Whitehurst (1994).

K–6 classroom teachers often struggle to create time for one-on-one reading opportunities with students. Instead, educators can cultivate questioning by implementing "I wonder . . ." in small-group or whole-class strategy lessons. The following list gives examples of additional question starters that can guide educators as they model questioning and prompt students as they practice it:

- Who . . . ? What . . . ? Where . . . ?
When . . . ?
- How come . . . ?
- Why . . . ?
- What does that mean?
- What does that make you think of in your own life experience, in another text, or in the world?
- Does that question make you think of another question?

Lists like these can be used to create a classroom and library poster for readers' reference during individual and group engagements with texts. Educators and students can add their own question starters to expand on these possibilities.

In addition to "I wonder," educators often ask students to question by using the "five Ws"—Who? What? Where? When? and Why?—along with How? At the knowledge level, these clarifying questions situate the reader in the story or informational text and are basic aids to comprehension. Creating a category matrix to note questions that are raised before, during, and after the reading may serve as a guide for story listeners to emulate when they are reading and posing their own questions. Educators can begin by

recording questions on a class-size matrix (figure 5-1). During and after questioning, they can guide students in noting specifics about the questions. Was the question answered “on the line” in the text (code with *), or did a reader use his own background knowledge to infer the answer “between the lines” (code with **)? If the question wasn’t answered (code with ***), how can an answer be found, or is there an answer to this question? Thinking this way about the five Ws and How helps readers understand that these fundamental questions can be used to delve deeper into a text and can lead to sophisticated questioning and thinking.

Figure 5-2 illustrates educators’ use of think-alouds to model questioning that begins with the cueing strategy framed by a book’s cover, continues throughout the reading of the book, and extends beyond the reading. With this strategy, questioning propels readers through the story, creating a dialogue among the characters, the author-illustrator, the text, and the

readers themselves. The act of asking and answering questions motivates readers to turn the page in order to ask and to answer more questions. This level of engagement with texts helps readers achieve comprehension and offers a window into the deeper meanings associated with accessing the author-illustrator’s message or theme and the personal meanings made by the story readers themselves; see Moreillon (2003) for development of this strategy as a foundation for an online, integrated language arts, fine arts, and technology unit.

Questioning must also be practiced with texts in content areas for which students are often asked to answer literal, inferential, and evaluative questions. Ouzts (1998) notes that one way to approach questions is to study question-answer relationships (QARs). In this model, students are asked to classify questions by the source of their answers. Is the question literal; is it found “on the line”? The answers to

Fig. 5-1 Questioning Matrix

	Before Reading	During Reading	After Reading
Who?			
What?			
Where?			
When?			
Why?			
How?			

*Answered “on the line” (in the text)

**Answered “between the lines” (by connecting information with own knowledge)

***Unanswered questions (may require research)

these questions may be found on a specific page in the text, or they may require that readers synthesize information found at various points in the text. Is the question inferential (see chapter 6); is it found “between the lines” by combining the information in the text with the reader’s background knowledge? Is the question evaluative; does it require readers to make a judgment or state an opinion? Categorizing their own questions by type and answers by their sources helps students understand the ways questions support comprehension. Becoming proficient at identifying QARs can also help students negotiate standardized test questions and answers.

The advanced sample lesson in this chapter focuses on the QAR strategy. Other questioning models are also available for teaching questioning as a reading comprehension strategy. Reciprocal questioning, or “ReQuest” (Manzo 1969), involves the class reading the text silently before the educator gives a prompt question such as “Is the setting in the past, present, or future?” Students then respond by asking related questions such as “Does the text begin with ‘A long time ago when dinosaurs roamed the earth?’” Another strategy, questioning the author, or “QtA” (Beck et al. 1997), challenges students to pose questions in order to determine what the author means. These questions are targeted to expose the author’s assumptions and to clarify the intended meaning. Through collaborative planning, educators can match challenging and appropriate texts with these strategies as well.

MAKING LITERATURE CONNECTIONS

Which texts lend themselves to exploring questioning strategies depends on the context in which they are used. Texts that prompt questions for some readers may or may not prompt questions for others. The usefulness of particular texts to teach this strategy is dependent on the students’ connections and their purpose for reading.

Some informational books utilize a question-and-answer format that can model a line of thinking as one reads on a topic of curricular or personal interest. The *Don’t Know Much About* series frames inquiry in this manner on topics related to social studies. In *Don’t Know Much about the Pioneers*, author Kenneth Davis begins by asking who the pioneers were and defining them as “trailblazers.” This prompts him to ask these follow-up questions: “Weren’t there people already living in the West 150 years ago?” and “Did pioneers call themselves ‘pioneers?’”

In the social studies and science curricula, a series such as *I Wonder Why* also uses the question-and-answer format to lead students on a guided inquiry into a topic. A science example is *I Wonder Why Volcanoes Blow Their Tops* (Greenwood). Beginning with lightning, a weather phenomenon with which most readers have firsthand knowledge, and progressing through forest fires, wind, tornadoes, and more, the author builds readers’ knowledge of natural disasters and their consequences on people and nature. In addition to answering the main questions asked on each page, the author adds sidebars, which may answer more questions or prompt readers to ask additional questions.

Informational texts for which students do not have a vast store of background knowledge can also be used to prompt questions. For example, if students are studying the Pilgrims and are unfamiliar with the food, the clothing, the ship *Mayflower*, or other artifacts related to Pilgrim culture and their arrival in North America, it is natural for students to generate questions while reading about them. To further explore the topic of the Pilgrims, which is prominent in social studies curricula in the elementary grades, informational books can also bring previously held knowledge into question and thereby prompt the reexamination of long-believed “facts.” *Mayflower 1620: A New Look at a Pilgrim Voyage* (Plimoth Plantation) is one such book. Were all the people on board the *Mayflower* “Pilgrims”? Who were the others on the ship? Were there tensions and disagreements among the passengers and between the passengers and crew?

Fig. 5-2 Questioning Before, During, and After Reading

Text: *We Are the Ship: The Story of Negro League Baseball*, by Kadir Nelson

Before Reading: Questions Related to the Cover, the Frontispiece, and the Title Page

One teacher reads the title of the book and the author-illustrator's name. The other teacher asks himself questions aloud. After the questioner has shared his thinking about the cover and back cover (A), the reader turns to the verso of the title page and front matter (B), and then to the foreword by Hank Aaron (C).

A: I'm thinking about the title of the book. What does "We Are the Ship" have to do with baseball? Who is the player on the front cover and what are the letters on his jersey? I know there are no "Negro" leagues today. When did they exist?

On the back cover of the book, there is a quote about a player named Gibson who sounds like he was a dynamite player. It says this is "our story." Who is the narrator in this book? Did he play in the Negro leagues?

B: There are lots of quotes from players remarking on each other's greatness. There are many team names I've never heard of before: Indianapolis ABCs, Kansas City Monarchs, and Philadelphia Stars. How many teams played in the Negro leagues? Were there different divisions? Were African American players always banned from playing in the major leagues? How did that happen?

I see that the book's title is based on a quote from Rube Foster, founder of the Negro National League. Did he mean that the ship was what was important and the sea was unimportant? I am not sure.

C: I learned that Hank Aaron played in the Negro leagues before signing up with the major leagues. Why did he have to "do twice as much and work twice as hard" to be a major league ball player? Why did he feel he "owed it" to the black players who came before him?

During Reading: Example from the First Few Pages

The reader begins and stops before turning each page so the listener can answer and ask questions. Before resuming reading, the reader asks the listener why or how posing questions supports his understanding of the text.

The author-illustrator Kadir Nelson calls the first chapter "1st Inning Beginnings." I wonder if there will be nine chapters like the nine innings in a regular baseball game. I still don't know who the narrator is, but he (just a guess) uses words like 'cause, ol', and 'round. This is an informational book; some of the words are informal. I wonder if the narrator was a Negro league player.

The part about Rube Foster's "bunt-and-run" invention is curious. I wonder if the white leagues copied this play. What else did the Negro league managers and players do especially well? Was their game different from the way baseball was played in the white leagues?

I have lots of questions about the discrimination the Negro league players faced when they traveled around the country. How did they feel about being kept out of the major leagues? Did both black and white people come to their games? Did they ever have trouble finding hotels or restaurants that would serve them when they were on the road? Did they have clashes with the Ku Klux Klan?

I wonder if it was difficult for Kadir Nelson to research this topic. Did he have primary source documents to guide him in writing and illustrating this text?

The listener continues to provide this think-aloud dialogue with the text as the reader continues reading and questioning the listener about the benefits of this process.

After Reading: Reflection and Further Questions

At the end of the book, the author gives a list of Negro league players who made it to the major leagues and those who made it into the National Baseball Hall of Fame. I think Kadir Nelson hopes that readers will respect the achievements of the Negro leagues and the players who overcame great odds to develop their skills as professional ballplayers.

Asking and sometimes answering my questions as I read helped me feel like I was part of this time in history. I was there with the players who faced discrimination and persevered. Kadir Nelson's powerful portraits strengthen the print and add to the information in the book.

I wonder if athletes in other sports were also discriminated against and not allowed to play on some professional teams. I wonder if artists, musicians, and entertainers also experienced extreme prejudice at this time in U.S. History.

Was the Mayflower Compact a democratic document, or was it something else?

Biographies and historical fiction can also lend themselves to practicing questioning strategies. As with historical information books, readers' lack of background knowledge can prompt them to ask authentic questions before, during, and after reading. Instead of building a great deal of prior knowledge, educators can support students in developing questioning strategies by explicitly stating that readers' background knowledge is not yet developed and that questioning is a useful tool when confronting challenging texts on unfamiliar topics. Textbooks in all content areas can also be used effectively to teach and practice questioning.

Fictional texts of all types, both poetry and prose, can also be effective in teaching this strategy. Fantasy or science fiction texts, which by definition present alternate realities, can prompt numerous questions about the unfamiliar story elements presented—but make sure your students are sophisticated enough to distinguish fantasy and science fiction from realistic fiction. In choosing texts, the most important considerations are students' background knowledge and connections and their interest in the topics, themes, or story elements presented in the texts.

CHILDREN'S LITERATURE CITED

Starred titles are used in the lesson plans.

- **Amelia and Eleanor Go for a Ride*, by Pam Muñoz Ryan, illustrated by Brian O. Selznick
- **Amelia Earhart*, by Jonatha A. Brown
- **The Day of Ahmed's Secret*, by Florence Parry Heide and Judith Heide Gilliland, illustrated by Ted Lewin
- Don't Know Much about the Pioneers*, by Kenneth C. Davis, illustrated by Renée Andriana

- **Eleanor Roosevelt*, by Jonatha A. Brown
- I Wonder Why Volcanoes Blow Their Tops*, by Rosie Greenwood

- Mayflower 1620: A New Look at a Pilgrim Voyage*, by Plimoth Plantation, illustrated by Sisse Brimberg and Cotton Coulson

- **More Than Anything Else*, by Marie Bradby, illustrated by Chris K. Soentpiet

- **Tomás and the Library Lady*, by Pat Mora, illustrated by Raúl Colón

- We Are the Ship: The Story of Negro League Baseball*, by Kadir Nelson

- The Wise Woman and Her Secret*, by Eve Merriam, illustrated by Linda Graves

LESSON PLANS

In these strategy lessons, classroom teachers and school librarians divide the class to lower the student-teacher ratio. This allows educators to maximize individual students' experiences with this strategy and increase student-teacher or student-student interaction. Educators provide think-aloud strategies to demonstrate how to utilize questioning to comprehend new texts before, during, and after reading. Although graphic organizers are provided for recording questions, students can use large sticky notes to record their questions and place them on the book covers or pages of the text where they posed the questions.

Strategic questions that focus on learning how to learn are interjected throughout the lessons. The lessons at the higher levels of development build on the previous one by adding a more sophisticated analysis of questioning strategies. Advancing students may benefit from experiencing the emerging lesson with the same or a different text, and advanced students may benefit from engaging in all three lessons in sequence with the texts utilized in the examples or with different texts.

LESSON PLAN 5.1

Reading Comprehension Strategy Three

Questioning

Reading Development Level: Emerging

Instructional Strategies

Cues and Questions, Categorizing, and Comparing

Lesson Length

2 or 3 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to record questions posed before, during, and after reading a text and to utilize a Venn diagram to compare questions.

Objectives

After reading *The Day of Ahmed's Secret*, students will be able to

1. Pose before, during, and after questions using key vocabulary words.
2. Compare questions asked by two groups and identify unanswered questions.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

The Day of Ahmed's Secret, by Florence Parry Heide and Judith Heide Gilliland, illustrated by Ted Lewin (two copies)

Egypt Pathfinder: <http://storytrail.com/Impact/Egypt.htm>

Graphic organizers: 5.1 Questioning Category Matrix, 5.1 Venn Diagram, 5.1 Question Evaluation Graphic Organizer

Materials: Rosewater and photographs of modern-day Cairo, Egypt. (Make rosewater in the spring with fresh rose petals or purchase it from a Middle Eastern market.)

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators divide the class in half. Each half of the class reads the same book and completes a class-size questioning category matrix. Educators facilitate as the groups compare their questions using a Venn diagram and complete the question evaluation graphic organizer.

Assessment

Educators monitor students' ability to pose questions and to identify similarities and differences in their questions. The Venn diagram shows the comparison, and the question evaluation sheet shows which question most influenced each student's comprehension.

Standards

Reading keywords: answer or pose questions; culture; comprehension; vocabulary; compare events of characters and conflicts in literary selections from a variety of cultures to their experiences

Writing keywords: prewriting; organize ideas using webs, maps, or lists (Venn diagram); generate topics

Social studies keywords: geography; places have distinct physical and cultural characteristics; communities

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Develop and refine a range of questions to frame search for new understanding. (1.1.3)
- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Display initiative and engagement by posing questions and investigating the answers beyond the collection of superficial facts. (1.2.1)

PROCESS

MOTIVATION

Working with the entire class, distribute small cups of rosewater. Let the students know that this kind of water is sold on the streets in Cairo, Egypt. Ask students to smell, taste, and drink the water slowly and describe its smell and taste to a partner.

Cues and Questions: What gives this water flavor? Rosewater is made by putting rose petals in hot water (steeping). Do you think you would find someone today on the street in downtown [your city/town] selling rosewater for people to drink? People who live in different communities have different traditions; they have different cultures. They do some things differently and some things the same as people do in our community. Define culture as a community's traditions, languages, art and music, foods, celebrations, and religions. When we ask questions about an unfamiliar culture, we use what we know about our own culture to think about similarities and differences.

Use the Egypt Pathfinder, posters, photo prints, or books to show students images of modern-day Cairo. Use the visual aids to introduce the key vocabulary words: *culture*, *community*, *transportation*, *rosewater*, *cart*, *caravan*, *fuel*, *camel*, *butagaz* (which is defined on the verso of the title page), and *lantern*. Using the key vocabulary words, discuss and ask questions about this information.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Ask before, during, and after questions.
2. Use key vocabulary words.
3. Compare questions asked by two groups.
4. Identify unanswered questions.
5. Choose the most important question.

PRESENTATION

Divide the class in half. Each student sits with a partner. Each educator reads *The Day of Ahmed's Secret* with half the class. Read the title and the author's and illustrator's name. Show the double-page spread book jacket. Ask students to describe what they see to a partner.

The educator models asking questions based on the book jacket. Ask: “What is Ahmed delivering with his donkey cart? Do all the people in Cairo use animals for transportation? Is Ahmed working? Could this story take place today? How do we know? What is Ahmed’s secret? Will he tell his secret to someone?” Invite students to ask questions as well. Using one color marker, record several of these or other questions in complete sentences on the “before reading” section of a class-size 5.1 Questioning Category Matrix.

Conduct a book walk and think aloud. Model asking questions and, when answers are found in the illustrations, model answering questions from evidence in the paintings. Note the expressions on the characters’ faces as well as other details in the images. (Do not share the last three pages or reveal Ahmed’s secret.)

Begin reading the print. While reading the first half of the book, think aloud and use another color marker to record the educator’s (or students’) questions in the “during reading” section of the category matrix. The educator records the questions as complete sentences in the appropriate column on the matrix and records the answers, if found, in parentheses as notes. Review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra).

In the second half of the book, stop at the end of each double-page spread. Ask students to think-pair-share and prompt them to ask questions as complete sentences and suggest notes for answers when found. The educator records questions and answers on the category matrix.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Think-pair-share possible questions.
2. Ask questions as complete sentences.
3. Suggest answers as notes.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Monitor students as they pose questions. Remind students to focus on asking rather than answering questions. Provide additional modeling as needed.

CLOSURE

With a third color marker, pose and record “after reading” questions. Use the same student participation procedures. Review all of the questions posed. Which were answered in the text? Which remain unanswered? Reach consensus on one final burning question.

Bring the two groups together. Use a class-size 5.1 Venn Diagram to record (in notemaking format) the groups’ similar and different questions.

Guide students as they complete the 5.1 Question Evaluation Graphic Organizer. In addition to the bibliographic information, the students report which question helped them most in understanding the story. Share each group’s final burning question.

REFLECTION

How did questioning keep us engaged in the story? How did it help us understand the story? Did we all ask the same questions? Did we all find the same questions useful? Do we have the same final burning question?

EXTENSION

Conduct an inquiry based on the students’ final burning questions. This extension can be conducted with both educators facilitating. It can also be conducted in the library with a small group or with half the class, giving the classroom teacher the opportunity to work with the other students in the classroom.

LESSON PLAN 5.2

Reading Comprehension Strategy Three

Questioning

Reading Development Level: Advancing

Instructional Strategies

Cues, Classifying, and Cooperative Learning

Lesson Length

2 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to record questions before, during, and after reading and to note how questions can be asked and answered to propel readers forward through the text.

Objectives

After reading *Tomás and the Library Lady* and *More Than Anything Else*, students will be able to

1. Pose and record before, during, and after questions on a category matrix.
2. Evaluate questions and determine their relative importance in comprehending the text.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Tomás and the Library Lady, by Pat Mora, illustrated by Raul Colón (two copies)

More Than Anything Else, by Marie Bradby, illustrated by Chris K. Soentpiet (multiple copies)

Graphic organizers: 5.2 Teacher Resource: Questioning Category Matrix, 5.2 Questioning Category Matrix, 5.2 Question Evaluation Graphic Organizer

Materials: Markers in three colors for educators and fine-tipped markers in the same three colors for students

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

To maximize students' engagement in the questioning strategy, each educator works with half the class. With the second text, students work in small groups with both educators monitoring.

Assessment

The students' group questioning matrix assesses their ability to pose questions before, during, and after reading. Educators must establish criteria for the quality of completed matrices. Students complete a question evaluation graphic organizer for the second text, *More Than Anything Else*.

Standards

Reading keywords: ask relevant questions in order to comprehend text; generate clarifying questions to comprehend text; describe the historical and cultural aspects of literature

Social studies keywords: use stories to describe past events and cultures; identify examples of individual actions, character, and values

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Develop and refine a range of questions to frame search for new understanding. (1.1.3)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Display initiative and engagement by posing questions and investigating the answers beyond the collection of superficial facts. (1.2.1)
- Collaborate with others to exchange ideas, develop new understandings, make decisions, and solve problems. (2.1.5)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Cues: With each educator working with half the class, share the book jacket of *Tomás and the Library Lady*. Read the title and author's and illustrator's names. Ask: "Why is there a mark over the 'a' in Tomás's name?" Record these questions in the appropriate categories (Who? What? Where? When? Why? How?) using one color marker in the column labeled "before reading" on a class-size 5.2 Questioning Category Matrix. Periodically, ask students what additional questions they have about the title and the book jacket. Ask students to identify the question category and record (see the 5.2 Teacher Resource: Questioning Category Matrix).

Tell the students that both the educator and the students will pose questions throughout and after the reading. The educator records the questions as complete sentences in the appropriate column on the matrix and records the answers as notes. Review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra).

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Ask questions before, during, and after reading.
2. Decide the question category.
3. Evaluate the questions.

PRESENTATION

Read *Tomás and the Library Lady*. While reading, pose and record questions in the "during reading" section of the matrix using a marker of another color. Educators use think-alouds as they determine questions. Encourage students to ask questions and probe students for the category of their questions. The educator records the questions in complete sentences and records answers, when learned, as notes.

*Excerpted from *Standards for the 21st-Century Learner* by the American Association of School Librarians, a division of the American Library Association, copyright © 2007 American Library Association. Available for download at www.ala.org/aasl/standards. Used with permission.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Raise hand to stop reading.
2. Ask a question and determine the category.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Periodically pose strategic questions: How does asking questions get us excited, keep us engaged, and so on, while reading this book?

CLOSURE

After reading the book, select the third color marker and follow the same procedures to pose and record questions in the “after reading” column of the category matrix. Review the questions. “Which questions helped us understand the story better”? Ask students to vote for one most important question in each column. Project the 5.2 Question Evaluation Graphic Organizer and work as a group to fill out this example.

DAY 2**STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES**

1. Ask questions before, during, and after reading.
2. Decide the category and record questions as complete sentences.
3. Record answers (when learned) as notes.
4. Evaluate the importance of the questions.

PRESENTATION

Review the previous day’s category matrix and question evaluation graphic organizer for *Tomás and the Library Lady*.

Divide the entire class into small groups of three or four students to read multiple copies of *More Than Anything Else*. Students decide how to read the book: one person reading, or rotating with each person taking a turn by reading a page. Students pose and record questions on a small-group 5.2 Questioning Category Matrix and evaluate the questions for their usefulness in helping them understand the text on the 5.2 Question Evaluation Graphic Organizer.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Make a group decision about how to read the book.
2. Pause after reading each page.
3. Ask questions before, during, and after reading. (Use three different color markers.)
4. Determine question categories.
5. Take turns writing the questions on the group category matrix.
6. Discuss questions as a group.
7. Record answers as notes.
8. Complete an individual question evaluation graphic organizer.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students’ ability to read the text. They support struggling readers and monitor students’ ability to pause the reading to pose, to categorize, and to record questions.

When students have completed their small-group matrices, educators monitor students' discussions about the most useful question in each category. Students record their individual choices for most useful questions on the question evaluation graphic organizer.

CLOSURE

Combine students from two groups into one. Share questions. Did groups ask the same questions before, during, and after reading? Which question was most useful for each reader in each category?

REFLECTION

How did questioning help us comprehend the text? Did both groups ask the same questions before, during, and after reading? Did we all agree on the most useful question in each category?

EXTENSIONS

Conduct an inquiry based on the students' unanswered questions. This extension can be conducted with both educators facilitating. It can also be conducted in the library with small groups, giving the classroom teacher the option to work with the other students in the classroom.

Provide students with lessons that prompt them to engage in asking before, during, and after questions while learning with other media. Films and websites on science and social studies topics may be especially effective.

LESSON PLAN 5.3

Reading Comprehension Strategy Three

Questioning

Reading Development Level: Advanced

Instructional Strategies

Cues and Questions and Classifying

Lesson Length

3–5 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to use questioning before, during, and after reading a historical fiction picture book, to prompt a deeper investigation into two historical figures, and to continue to use questioning strategies while reading biographies in order to understand the lives and contributions of these two people. Rather than concentrating on answering questions per se, the focus in this QAR lesson is on recording and coding questions for which answers can be found “on the line” or “between the lines” and questions not answered in the text.

Objectives

After reading *Amelia and Eleanor Go for a Ride* and a biography, students will be able to

1. Pose questions before, during, and after reading a historical fiction text.
2. Code QARs during and after reading.
3. Identify primary source documents.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Amelia and Eleanor Go for a Ride, by Pam Muñoz Ryan, illustrated by Brian Selznick

Amelia Earhart, by Jonatha A. Brown

Eleanor Roosevelt, by Jonatha A. Brown

Graphic organizers: 5.3 Teacher Resource: QAR Category Matrix, 5.3 QAR Category Matrix

Materials: Highlighters of three different colors for students

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

While one educator reads the historical fiction book, the other records questions before, during, and after reading on a category matrix. After recording questions, one educator reads the author’s note. The educators then code the questions based on the location of the answers (“on the line,” “between the lines,” or “unanswered”). See the 5.3 Teacher Resource: QAR Category Matrix for a completed example.

Educators divide the class in half and continue to practice questioning and categorizing questions while reading brief biographies. Students code the questions and determine what questions are unanswered. Educators facilitate a discussion comparing the two groups' QAR category matrices and unanswered questions.

Assessment

The students' category matrices show their use of questioning to achieve comprehension. Educators must establish criteria for the quality of completed matrices.

Standards

Reading keywords: ask relevant questions in order to comprehend; locate facts in response to questions about expository text

Social studies keywords: Use primary source material; retell stories to describe past events

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Develop and refine a range of questions to frame search for new understanding. (1.1.3)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Show social responsibility by participating actively with others in learning situations and by contributing questions and ideas during group discussions. (3.2.2)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Cues and Questions: Have women in our country always been able to do the same things men do? Brainstorm a list of things men can do in the United States, such as driving cars, flying airplanes, voting, and being elected president. Can women do these things too? When do you think these activities were commonplace for women? What about being elected president? When do you think that might happen?

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Pose questions before, during, and after reading.
2. Code for QARs during and after reading.
3. Discuss how to answer unanswered questions.

PRESENTATION

Review the definition of historical fiction and identify *Amelia and Eleanor Go for a Ride* as a historical fiction book. Provide cues before reading by utilizing questioning to explore the book covers (see the 5.3 Teacher Resource: QAR Category Matrix). One educator reads the book while the other records before, during, and after questions on a class-size 5.3 QAR Category Matrix.

Educators pose questions using a think-aloud process, identify the question category, and code the answers as “on the line,” “between the lines,” or “unanswered.” While reading and recording questions, the educators model discussing how questioning helps readers become actively involved in understand-

*Excerpted from *Standards for the 21st-Century Learner* by the American Association of School Librarians, a division of the American Library Association, copyright © 2007 American Library Association. Available for download at www.ala.org/aasl/standards. Used with permission.

ing the text. If educators feel it is important to record the answer as well, they record the answers in parentheses as notes. Review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra).

CLOSURE

Review the questions asked and codes, and note unanswered questions. Ask how readers can learn more about Amelia Earhart and Eleanor Roosevelt.

DAY 2

Divide the class in half. Each half is responsible for posing questions while listening to a brief biography about Amelia Earhart or Eleanor Roosevelt. Students record questions on an individual 5.3 QAR Category Matrix.

MOTIVATION

Cues: What is the difference between historical fiction and biography? Identify the text as a biography. Read the table of contents. Conduct a book walk with a focus on viewing and discussing the illustrations and reading the captions. Notice and define the primary source documents contained in the text.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Pose questions before, during, and after reading an informational text.
2. Categorize and record questions before, during, and after reading.
3. Code questions during and after reading.
4. Discuss how to answer unanswered questions.

PRESENTATION

Read the information on the back of the book cover. Project the 5.3 QAR Category Matrix. Ask students to provide their own cues before reading by asking questions to prepare themselves to read the text. Categorize the questions and record on the matrix. Students copy questions in the appropriate category on their individual QAR category matrices. As the educator reads the text, students continue asking questions, categorize them, and record them on their individual matrices.

If necessary, educators use the think-aloud process to review and model questioning and categorize the questions during and after the reading. If more support is needed, educators can also record questions for students to copy.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Raise hand to pause the reading and ask a question.
2. Categorize and record questions on a QAR category matrix during and after reading.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' questioning and their identification of categories.

CLOSURE

After reading, review the questions posed before, during, and after reading.

DAY 3

MOTIVATION

Bring both groups together. Pose questions: “Do you always find the answers to questions stated on the line in a text? Are some answers found between the lines? What does that mean? What do we do with unanswered questions? Why is it important to know the source of the answer to a question? How does this help you find answers to specific questions?”

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Use highlighters of three different colors to code questions by the source of the answers.
2. Tabulate the number of each type.

PRESENTATION

Using examples from the “before reading” questions, the educators use think-alouds to identify and circle questions that were answered “on the line” with one color highlighter, questions that were answered “between the lines” with another color, and “unanswered” questions with a third color. Students copy the educators’ work by appropriately highlighting questions in the “before reading” category on their own matrices. Tabulate the number of questions in each category and note it at the bottom of the page.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Circle “on the line” questions with one color of highlighter.
2. Circle “between the lines” questions with another color.
3. Circle unanswered questions with a third color.
4. Tabulate the number of each type of QAR.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Students code “during” and “after” reading questions on their own. Educators monitor for correct identification of QARs.

PRESENTATION

Pair the students, one from each biography group. To demonstrate partner work, educators model taking turns sharing one “before,” one “during,” and one “after” question and telling where the answer was found, if it was found. Then they tell the most important thing they learned and one unanswered question about Amelia Earhart or Eleanor Roosevelt.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Take turns.
2. Share one before, one during, and one after question.
3. Share where, or if, the answer was found.
4. Share one important new idea.
5. Share one unanswered question.

CLOSURE

Review the characteristics of historical fiction and biographies. What is a primary source document? Discuss the use of QARs as support for comprehension, for conducting research or inquiry projects, and as a valuable test-taking skill.

REFLECTION

How did asking questions before, during, and after reading keep us engaged with the text? How did questions help us comprehend these texts? What can readers do with the unanswered questions?

EXTENSIONS

Working with a classmate from the other group, students can work in pairs to write a historical fiction dialogue between these two women. Fold a sheet of lined paper in half; each student writes on one half. The students take turns asking and answering each other's questions as well as sharing ideas based on the information they learned from hearing these texts. This procedure can be done electronically as well by setting up a document with a two-column table and multiple rows. Students can then keyboard their dialogues, each using one of the columns.

Provide students with additional lessons that prompt them to ask questions before, during, and after learning from multimedia resources. The Library of Congress's American Memory Project provides lessons by themes, topics, disciplines, and eras. Several may be particularly engaging for advanced readers: How Transportation Transformed America: Going to Market; Journeys West; and Suffrage Strategies: Voice for Votes. Access them at www.loc.gov/teachers/classroommaterials/lessons.

Reading Comprehension Strategy Four

Making Predictions and Inferences

*When the fox opened the door, there stood a delicious-looking piglet.
“Oh, no!” screamed the piglet.
“Oh, yes!” cried the fox. “You’ve come to the right place.”*

—From *My Lucky Day*, by Keiko Kasza

COLLABORATIVE TEACHING IN THE AGE OF ACCOUNTABILITY

MAXIMIZING YOUR IMPACT

- » **Strategy One: Activating or Building Background Knowledge**
- » **Strategy Two: Using Sensory Images**
- » **Strategy Three: Questioning**
- » **Strategy Four: Making Predictions and Inferences**
- » Strategy Five: *Determining Main Ideas*
- » Strategy Six: *Using Fix-up Options*
- » Strategy Seven: *Synthesizing*

As they read and pose questions, readers often find themselves answering their own questions with predictions about what will happen next or with inferences drawn from the author’s or illustrator’s creations. The “on the line” strategy of predicting and the “between the lines” strategy of inferring prompt readers to turn the page to find out if their hypotheses are correct. Predictions are educated guesses about what will happen next based on what is known from reading the text; they can also involve readers’ background knowledge. Inferences require that readers go beyond literal meaning; they use the print and illustrations plus their prior knowledge and experience to interpret the text. Through these processes, readers find clues or connecting points, make predictions or inferences, and draw conclusions. These interpretations are a critical part of reading comprehension. Readers who make predictions and inferences before, during, and after they read are actively engaged in the meaning-making process.

Accomplished authors and illustrators of well-constructed picture books, chapter books, and novels have respect for the knowledge readers bring to the literary experience. They leave clues for readers to lead them on throughout the reading journey. They rely on readers to flesh out their texts by making connections between clues and readers’ own background knowledge, values, and beliefs. The importance of prediction and inference in reading comprehension stems from the transactional nature of the reading event. If we understand reading

as a transaction between a text, a reader, and the context in which the work is experienced, then the literal denotation of the words on the page and the content of the illustrations are only part of the story. For the transaction to occur, the reader must interpret the text. The unique interpretation of each reader is then an essential component of comprehension. As Meek suggests, “What is happening to the reader is as important as the text itself” (1988, 37).

This perspective honors the role of the reader in making meaning. It suggests that unique interpretations are valued and invaluable. When designing literature engagements, educators foster personalized interpretations by using a reading transaction framework that allows for multiple interpretations. As students immerse themselves in the deeper “between the lines” meanings of texts, they come to think of reading as a “lived-through” experience (Rosenblatt 1995). Just like a trip to the park or to a museum, reading a book is an event to be experienced, an event on which one can reflect and from which one can learn.

By sharing their unique responses to what they read, students who discuss their reading with partners or within literature circles learn that there are multiple perspectives that can mirror and enrich, or contradict or contrast with, their own interpretations of a work. A collaborative social context for talking about books gives readers a place for engaging in discussions and sharing interpretations. Book discussions can become a central part of life in the classroom and in the library. On facilitating literature circles, see Short and Pierce (1990).

Teaching inference strategy can be quite personally rewarding for both students and educators. Readers are often asked to interact with the literal meanings on the pages, but inference requires that readers individually consider their own beliefs, values, and experiences before drawing conclusions. “To push beyond the literal text, to make it personal and three-dimensional, to weave it into our own stories—that is to infer” (Keene and Zimmermann 1997, 152). Readers must take the information provided by the author or illustrator and pass it through their own worldviews in order to determine what makes sense for them. By

definition, inference requires that each reader construct a meaning that makes the text a reflection of her experience. In this way, the text becomes integrated into a reader’s schema or background knowledge and holds the potential to change that schema. Readers who excel at inference may actually experience a sense of rewriting the text as they read. What better way could there be to feel co-ownership along with the author and illustrator? Through this deep comprehension process, a reader’s newly made meanings are more personal, more personally valued, and longer remembered.

As we teach the making predictions and inferences strategy, we first model and then invite readers to connect profoundly, rather than superficially, with texts. Figure 6-1 uses the book *My Lucky Day* (Kasza) to show educators demonstrating the strategy as a way to engage actively with the text through the entire plot line.

Like an elephant using its head, we ask readers to use all of their mental faculties to think between the words and to think between the lines and through the images offered on the page or screen. Before they can make predictions or inferences, readers must bring together the text and the sum total of their prior knowledge. They must use their heads to their fullest potential.

HOW TO TEACH THE STRATEGY

We can think of making predictions and inferences as specific types of questioning strategies. Predicting and inferring can be at the word level; can be practiced at the sentence, paragraph, page, or chapter level; or can be accomplished through reflection at the end of a text. A variety of statements and questions can be used to prompt readers’ explorations with prediction and inference:

- I predict that . . .
- My guess is that . . .
- I suspect that . . .
- I think this clue means that . . .

Fig. 6-1 Predicting and Inferring Before, During, and After Reading

Text: *My Lucky Day*, by Keiko Kasza

Before Reading: Predictions and Inferences Related to the Front and Back Covers

One educator reads the title of the book and the author-illustrator's name. The other educator makes inferences and predictions based on the front (A) and back covers (B) of the book.

A: I'm thinking about the title of the book. Whose "lucky day" is it? The fox has a "lucky" look on his face, but so does the pig. My background knowledge tells me that when foxes (or wolves) and pigs get together, it's the pigs who get eaten. I can infer that the pig doesn't fully understand the situation.

B: On the back of the book, there's a painting of the fox that makes him look exhausted. It may be difficult for him to get the pig, but, in the end, I predict the pig is going to get eaten by the fox.

During Reading: Predictions and Inferences from the First Few Pages

On the first page, the fox is sharpening his claws. He's reading a book that's opened to a page entitled "Hunting A-Z." He hears a knock at the door. I predict it's the pig. The fox can't eat the pig at the very beginning of the story so something unpredictable will happen.

On the wall, there are paintings of the fox holding different types of captured prey. I can infer from this that he is a successful hunter. Whoever is knocking on the door thinks a rabbit lives here. The fox says he would have eaten rabbits for breakfast. Author-illustrator Keiko Kasza wants us to infer that the fox will eat whoever is knocking on the door.

The author writes that the pig is "delicious-looking." She paints the pig with a surprised expression and with fright or sweat pouring off his head. The fox grabs the piglet and hauls him inside. Keiko Kasza wants us to think the fox will eat the pig.

The fox says pig roast is his favorite dinner. The pig's in trouble. I predict the pig will get eaten.

But the pig talks the fox into giving him a bath first. I'm wondering if my prediction is correct.

The fox ties up the pig while he prepares the bath. When the fox is scrubbing the pig, the pig compliments the fox. There's a boat floating in the tub. These two things make me think this story might not turn out the way most fox and pig stories do. I can infer that the pig is "outfoxing" the fox. He's getting the upper hand in this situation.

Ending and After Reading: Inference and Reflection

The piglet did have a lucky day. He got a bath, a dinner, and a massage. I can infer that he had planned this all along.

On the last page, the pig is eating a cookie the fox baked for him. He's looking at his address book to decide which animal to "visit" next. He's already crossed off the fox and the coyote; the wolf and bear are still on his list. The piglet did plan his visit to the fox. I predict he will visit the wolf next.

Ooops! He visits the bear next. The piglet looks scared, but the bear is awfully big. I wonder if the pig will be able to outsmart the bear.

Keiko Kasza surprised us by creating a story in which our predictions and inferences don't pan out the way we think they should. About halfway through the story, we realize that the piglet is very smart, and we change our predictions and inferences to make the piglet come out on top. At the end, she throws us off again, because we just can't be sure that a small piglet can really outsmart a huge bear.

By making predictions about what will happen next and using our background knowledge about pig and fox stories and by reading between the lines, we began to infer a different outcome. We were like detectives using the clues in the story. Our predictions and inferences made it fun to read on to find out if we were able to predict the outcome of the story correctly. The ending leaves us wondering if this story will repeat with the piglet coming out the winner or if the pig will get eaten by the bear this time.

- I knew this would happen next because . . .
- I conclude that . . .
- What clues did the author or illustrator give readers?
- What do I see in my mind's eye that's not on the page?
- Why did that happen? What will happen next?
- What will happen next? Was I correct?
- What makes sense?
- What was the author trying to say in this story?
- What was the illustrator trying to show?

Educators can support students' practice of this strategy through the use of graphic organizers that require students to record their thinking. By providing evidence from the print or illustrations, students can "see" their own and their classmates' thought processes on paper. In figure 6-2 a category matrix specifies the evidence from the words and illustrations, the connecting background knowledge, and the resulting prediction or inference.

One simple way to help children understand the meaning of the words *predict* and *infer* is to use three- or four-panel cartoons. Visual images with a few or no words can help readers gain experience with logical sequences of thought and plot that characterize much of the reading they will do in their lives. Educators can share highly predictable cartoons such as those offered in figure 6-3. Readers identify the evidence in the image or words or their background knowledge that leads them to predict the next frame or to infer the possible fourth frame in these examples. Students enjoy creating their own cartoons to test their ability to convey plot logically.

The smaller student-teacher ratio afforded by coteaching greatly supports teaching and learning this strategy. Modeling for a whole group followed by small-group mini-lessons and small-group guided practice provides educators with insight into students' thinking or struggles with making inferences. The advanced sample lesson in this chapter suggests that small-group practice be facilitated by one or both

educators who can help students know when to stop and infer.

MAKING LITERATURE CONNECTIONS

PREDICTING

Predictable texts are a logical choice to build students' confidence in their ability to predict individual words or story elements. Rhyming poems and picture books offer readers opportunities to predict the word at the end of the next rhyming line. Educators can share texts students have not previously read to show them how the author or poet has constructed a predictable pattern through the use of rhyme. This can be fun for students, whether or not their hypotheses agree with the original. Educators can share their thinking as they model this important cognitive process. Mary Ann Hoberman and Michael Emberley have collaborated to create three eminently predictable and fun two-voice poetry titles based on readers' background knowledge of literacy experiences, fairy tales, and Mother Goose rhymes; each title begins with *You Read to Me, I'll Read to You*. To find rhyming fiction titles or rhyming poetry, conduct a library catalog search for "stories in rhyme" or "rhyming poems."

Books that count up such as *Just a Minute! A Trickster Tale and Counting Book* (Morales) and books that count down such as *Cha-Cha Chimps* (Durango/Taylor) or *Thunder Cake* (Polacco) also provide a pattern that story listeners and readers can soon identify. Books that follow predictable sequences, such as the seasons in *The Seasons of Arnold's Apple Tree* (Gibbons) or the days of the week in *Today Is Monday* (Carle), provide predictable patterns for readers who have this cultural knowledge. *Tomorrow's Alphabet* (Shannon/Crews) invites readers to play with the alphabet and challenges them to think and predict at the word level. By covering the right-hand page, readers can predict the surprises on every other page: "A is for seed—tomorrow's apple."

Patterned language books also provide support for predicting at the word or phrase level. Books like

Fig. 6-2 Locating Evidence in the Text for Predictions and Connecting Evidence

Text: *Two Bad Ants*, by Chris Van Allsburg

Text Prompt	Evidence (E) or Background Knowledge (BK)	Prediction (P) or Inference (I)
Crystals, queen ant loves taste, makes her happy	The white color and crystal shape suggest sugar. (E) Eating sweets makes people—and ants—happy. (BK)	Ants have discovered sugar. (I)
Boiling brown lake, tastes bitter	There is a spoon stirring a brown liquid. (E) Coffee is brown and bitter; people use sugar to make it sweeter. (BK)	Ants are in a cup of coffee. (I)
Cave	Nostrils and an upper lip are in the illustration. (E) A mouth is like a cave. People drink coffee. (BK)	Ants may be swallowed. (P)
Hiding place, red light, getting hotter, popped up, flying	A toaster is found in a kitchen; it's hot inside and toast pops up. (BK) Ants are being thrust out of a toaster. (E)	They will land somewhere in the kitchen. (P)
Waterfall, shiny surface, rushing water	A kitchen faucet has these features. (BK)	Ants may be swept into the sink, down the drain. (P)
Chamber, with wet food, frightening sounds, spinning	A kitchen garbage disposal has these features. (BK) The illustration shows pieces of things flying through the air. (E)	Ants could have been chopped up and were lucky to escape. (I)
Dark cells, force shot through wet ants	The illustration shows an electrical plug. (E) Water near electricity is dangerous. (BK)	Ants could have been electrocuted. (I)
Footsteps, got in line	The illustration shows the smiling ants following a fellow ant into a hole in the ground. (E) When you have a close call, you aren't likely to do that behavior again. (BK)	The two bad ants won't risk any more adventures. (P) It's safer to travel in a group and to follow the rules. (I)

Fig. 6-3 Using Cartoons to Make Predictions or Inferences



Illustrations by Lauren Cleff

Fortunately (Charlip) and *That's Good, That's Bad* (Cuyler/Catrow) quickly establish a pattern to help readers anticipate the unfolding of the plot. The web extras for this chapter include Patterned Language Books for Reading Aloud: A Selected Bibliography, a list of timeless classics and newer patterned language books categorized as folktales, picture books, and songs.

Texts in which the illustrations provide clues to help readers predict the plot sequence offer critical support for this strategy. In classics such as *Rosie's Walk* (Hutchins) and *Come Away from the Water, Shirley* (Burningham) and newer titles such as *The Mitten* (Brett) and *Officer Buckle and Gloria* (Rathmann), the illustrations supply visual story lines that parallel or extend the authors' words. These texts simply cannot be understood without interpreting the images as well as the print.

INFERRING

Inference, which allows readers to make their own meanings based on limited clues in the text, requires more sophistication than does prediction. Inferring meaning at the word level requires a significant amount of language experience. For students who are English speakers, books that include terms in other languages offer practice at inferring word meaning; students who are proficient speakers or readers of other languages can furnish the definitions after their English-dominant classmates have made their inferences. Beginning readers are both challenged and supported to infer the Spanish words in the *Eight Animals* series (Elya/Chapman). The *Chato* books (Soto/Guevera), which integrate Spanish words and Mexican American culture, are featured in the advancing lesson in this chapter. *The Boy Who Loved Words* (Schotter/Potter) challenges experienced readers to use visual and semantic cues to discover the meanings in Selig's rich word choices: "Selig stayed on the outskirts, always on the *periphery*—listening and collecting delicious words."

Using Picture Storybooks to Teach Literary Devices: Recommended Books for Children and Young Adults (Hall 2007) provides an annotated list of books that stretch readers with their use of foreshadowing and

inference. One excellent example is the Caldecott Award–winning classic *Where the Wild Things Are* (Sendak). Readers can infer the connection between Max's mischief and the "wild things" he tames; some readers will make connections to their own misbehavior and the resulting consequences. Even though his mother sent away him without his supper, readers can assume that Max is loved because someone brings his supper to his room. Surely it was his mom. Readers can also infer that Max's adventure to the land where the wild things are was just a brief imaginative journey, because when he returns his supper is still warm. Authors and illustrators who stretch readers to make inferences give them opportunities to achieve the satisfaction that comes from thinking deeply about texts as they engage in making meaning.

Identifying the theme of a story is arguably the ultimate inference. Unless specifically stated, readers must infer the author's or illustrator's intended message; Hall (2007) also provides annotated examples for the study of theme. A theme is an overall meaning that is left with the reader; as such, themes can be uniquely expressed. Sometimes themes are described as lessons, but many times the theme of a story is much more allusive. For example, *Fly Away Home* (Bunting/Himler) is a moving story about a homeless boy and his father who live in an airport. The book could prompt students to generate themes related to social topics such as homelessness, to life skills such as perseverance, to moral concepts such as fairness, or to human desires such as hope, among others. Asking students to flesh out these topics and to express themes in one complete sentence (figure 6-4) helps them specify the emotional impact of a particular text. Conversations around theme present readers with ideas for rich discussions.

The Mysteries of Harris Burdick (Van Allsburg) is perhaps one of the most sophisticated picture books that students can use to practice inference. Each double-page spread provides readers with a title, a couple lines of print, and an illustration that all beg to be interpreted. Readers can write entire stories based on the clues in the text. They can also be asked to justify

their stories by identifying the clues in the print and illustrations plus the background knowledge that led them to their unique interpretations. Instead of or in addition to writing, students can be invited to draw the next picture or sequence of pictures in the story as they imagine them.

CHILDREN’S LITERATURE CITED

Starred titles are used in the lesson plans.

The Boy Who Loved Words, by Roni Schotter, illustrated by Giselle Potter

Cha-Cha Chimps, by Julia Durango, illustrated by Eleanor Taylor

**Chato and the Party Animals*, by Gary Soto, illustrated by Susan Guevera

**Chato Goes Cruisin’*, by Gary Soto, illustrated by Susan Guevera

**Chato’s Kitchen*, by Gary Soto, illustrated by Susan Guevera

Come Away from the Water, Shirley, by John Burningham

Eight Animals Bake a Cake, by Susan Middleton Elya, illustrated by Lee Chapman

Eight Animals on the Town, by Susan Middleton Elya, illustrated by Lee Chapman

Eight Animals Play Ball, by Susan Middleton Elya, illustrated by Lee Chapman

Fly Away Home, by Eve Bunting, illustrated by Ronald Himler

Fortunately, by Remy Charlip

**Freedom Summer*, by Deborah Wiles, illustrated by Jerome Lagarrigue

**Goin’ Someplace Special*, by Patricia McKissack, illustrated by Jerry Pinkney

**If You Give a Moose a Muffin*, by Laura Joffe Numeroff, illustrated by Felicia Bond

**If You Give a Mouse a Cookie*, by Laura Joffe Numeroff, illustrated by Felicia Bond

**If You Give a Pig a Pancake*, by Laura Joffe Numeroff, illustrated by Felicia Bond

**If You Take a Mouse to School*, by Laura Joffe Numeroff, illustrated by Felicia Bond

Just a Minute! A Trickster Tale and Counting Book, by Yuyi Morales

The Mitten, by Jan Brett

My Lucky Day, by Keiko Kasza

The Mysteries of Harris Burdick, by Chris Van Allsburg

Officer Buckle and Gloria, by Peggy Rathmann

Rosie’s Walk, by Pat Hutchins

The Seasons of Arnold’s Apple Tree, by Gail Gibbons

**Teammates*, by Peter Golenbock, illustrated by Paul Bacon

That’s Good, That’s Bad, by Margery Cuyler, illustrated by David Catrow

Thunder Cake, by Patricia Polacco

Today Is Monday, by Eric Carle

Tomorrow’s Alphabet, by George Shannon, illustrated by Donald Crews

Fig. 6-4 Examples of One-Sentence Themes

Text: *Fly Away Home*, by Eve Bunting, illustrated by Ronald Himler

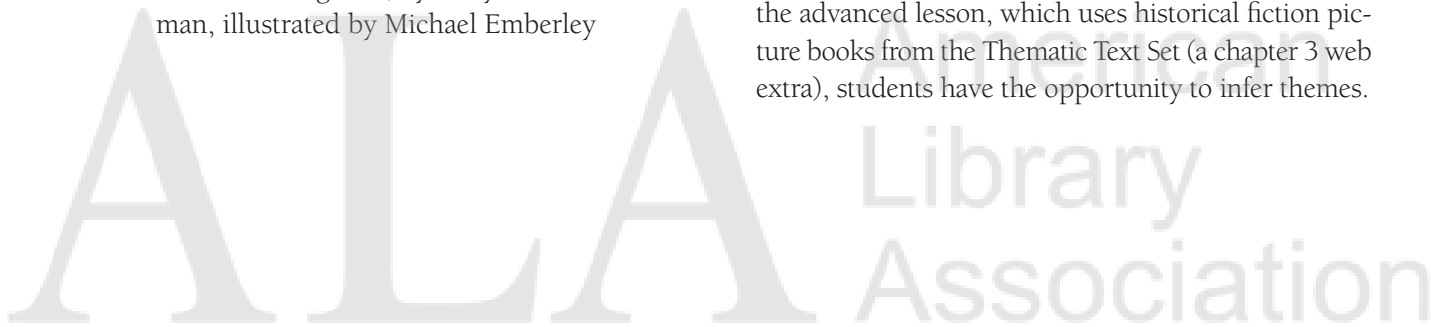
Topic	One-Sentence Theme
Homelessness	Every person deserves to have a home.
Perseverance	No matter how difficult your life seems, never give up trying to improve your situation.
Fairness	Unfortunately, life can be unfair.
Hope	If you keep hope in your heart, you may find a way out of an unhappy situation.

- Two Bad Ants*, by Chris Van Allsburg
- **The Unbreakable Code*, by Sara Hoagland
Hunter, illustrated by Julia Miner
- **Voices of the Alamo*, by Sherry Garland, illustrated by Ronald Himler
- Where the Wild Things Are*, by Maurice Sendak
- You Read to Me, I'll Read to You: Very Short Fairy Tales to Read Together (in which wolves are tamed, trolls are transformed, and peas are triumphant)*, by Mary Ann Hoberman, illustrated by Michael Emberley
- You Read to Me, I'll Read to You: Very Short Mother Goose Tales to Read Together*, by Mary Ann Hoberman, illustrated by Michael Emberley
- You Read to Me, I'll Read to You: Very Short Stories to Read Together*, by Mary Ann Hoberman, illustrated by Michael Emberley

..... LESSON PLANS

Predicting and inferring are similar to questioning in that students must be given opportunities to explore fully their individual thinking and connections. A smaller student-teacher ratio allows educators to maximize interaction before, during, and after reading. Although graphic organizers are provided for recording predictions and inferences, students can also use large sticky notes to record their ideas and place them on the book covers or pages of the text where they found evidence, made connections, and made predictions or inferences.

Each sample lesson focuses on a different aspect of prediction and inference. The emerging lesson is based on making logical predictions. The advancing lesson focuses on inferring the meanings of Spanish words as well as making predictions about plot development. In the advanced lesson, which uses historical fiction picture books from the Thematic Text Set (a chapter 3 web extra), students have the opportunity to infer themes.



LESSON PLAN 6.1

Reading Comprehension Strategy Four

Making Predictions

Reading Development Level: Emerging

Instructional Strategies

Nonlinguistic Representation and Cooperative Learning

Lesson Length

2 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to practice making predictions while reading a text, to record predictions in picture format on a storyboard, and to retell the story in sequence.

Objectives

After reading at least two books from the Numeroff/Bond series, students will be able to

1. Make logical predictions based on the information presented in the text.
2. Record their predictions as nonlinguistic representations in storyboard format.
3. Retell the story in sequence using their own predictions, which may or may not match those found in the original text.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

If You Give a Mouse a Cookie, by Laura Joffe Numeroff, illustrated by Felicia Bond

If You Give a Moose a Muffin, *If You Give a Pig a Pancake*, or *If You Take a Mouse to School*, by Numeroff and Bond. Gather multiple copies of two of these titles. Note: Not all books in this series are ideal for this lesson.

Graphic organizers: 6.1 Teacher Resource: Storyboard, 6.1 Storyboard, 6.1 Storyboard Self-Assessment Rubric

6.1 Using Cartoons to Make Predictions or Inferences

Materials: 11-by-17-inch sheet of white construction or legal paper folded into sixteen rectangles, pencils, and crayons

Document camera, data projector, or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators model for the entire class. Then they divide the class in half and into partner groups as students practice making and recording predictions and retelling the stories.

Assessment

Students self-assess their predictions (storyboard) and retelling using a rubric.

Standards

Reading keywords: predict; sequence a series of events; relate information in a text-to-life experience

Writing keywords: draw a picture or storyboard to show a sequence of events

Listening and speaking keywords: use effective vocabulary and logical organization to relate or summarize ideas, events, or information

Theater keywords: creative expression in performance; cooperate with others in dramatic play

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Use prior and background knowledge as a context for new learning. (1.1.2)
- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Organize knowledge so that it is useful. (2.1.2)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Project 6.1 Using Cartoons to Make Predictions or Inferences. Cover the final frame when presenting each cartoon. Ask: “What do you think will happen next?” Conduct a think-pair-share to predict the last frame of each cartoon. Then show the last frame. Educators demonstrate both a logical and an illogical prediction for each cartoon. Discuss how readers make predictions on the basis of information in the text.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Make predictions from the information in the text.
2. Draw predictions on the storyboard.
3. Retell the story using the storyboard.

PRESENTATION

Read the title and examine the front cover of the mentor text, *If You Give a Mouse a Cookie*. (Use a big book if one is available.) Make a prediction about who the main character is in the story. Read the book from beginning to end. Review the book and discuss the logical sequence of the “gifts” the boy gives the mouse. Note that this is a circle story, one that begins and ends in the same way. Define the term *prediction* and talk about how active readers can make predictions as they read.

Choose another Numeroff/Bond text from those listed in the resources section. Record the book title in the first frame of a class-size 6.1 Storyboard. Using the title and book jacket illustration, make a prediction about the main character and record/draw the character in the second frame. (See the 6.1 Teacher Resource: Storyboard. Electronic storyboarding tools, such as Wallwisher.com, can substitute for the paper storyboarding document.)

One educator reads the book, being careful not to reveal the next gift. (This works best with a document camera.) The other educator records one prediction for each double-page spread on the class-size 6.1 Storyboard.

Before turning each page, think aloud about what the next gift could be. Talk about how readers use their background knowledge to make predictions. Record the prediction before turning the page. Ask: “Did the prediction make sense?” (For instance, in *If You Give a Mouse a Cookie*, apple juice is as valid a prediction as a glass of milk.) In the third frame, record the first “gift” both in print and as a nonlinguistic representation. Read the next two-page spread, think aloud to predict, record the prediction, and check the prediction.

After a few pages, involve the students in making predictions. If their predictions are not logical, reread the introductory phrase or introductory sentence, think aloud, and then attempt another prediction. Once a prediction is made, draw or record it on the class-size storyboard. Continue this process throughout the reading. (It is important to demonstrate predictions that don’t match the text as well as ones that do.) Educators can also invite students to self-report whether or not their predictions matched the text by indicating with a thumbs-up or thumbs-down.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURE

1. Think-pair-share.
2. Raise hand to share a prediction with the class.
3. Ask: “Does this prediction make sense?”

GUIDED PRACTICE

Monitor students’ predictions for logic.

CLOSURE

After reading the entire book, one educator uses the storyboard to retell the class version of the story, which may or may not match the published version. Then project the 6.1 Storyboard Self-Assessment Rubric. Using the rubric, assess the storyboard and the retelling orally with the students.

DAY 2

PRESENTATION

Review the class-size storyboard from the previous day. Discuss how predictions were made from background knowledge plus information in the text.

Divide the class in half. Divide the students into partner groupings. Give each group one of two remaining Numeroff/Bond titles, a piece of paper to cover the right-hand side of each double-page spread, and a 6.1 Storyboard for each student.

The educator reads the book. She stops at the end of each two-page spread to allow students to work with their partners to make and record predictions. Students must wait to turn the page and cover the right-hand side of each page before turning the page. Explain the practice procedures.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Record the title in the first frame.
2. Record the main character in the second frame.
3. Record the first gift in the third frame.

4. Make predictions by whispering to your partner.
5. Record your prediction by drawing or writing.
6. Move the cover sheet to the next page.
7. Wait until the teacher says to turn the page.
8. Put one finger up if your prediction matched the one in the book. Put two fingers up if it did not match.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' predictions and ask them questions related to the logic of their predictions.

CLOSURE

Bring the two groups back together. Form an inside-outside circle, with a group that read one book on the inside and the group that read the other book on the outside. Students retell their stories using their storyboards. Ask new partners to tell how to make a prediction while reading. If appropriate, rotate one circle to the left or right for additional retellings.

Students self-assess their storyboards and retellings with the 6.1 Storyboard Self-Assessment Rubric.

REFLECTION

How do we make predictions when we read? Did we all make the same predictions? How did predicting help us stay interested in the story?

HOMEWORK

At the completion of this lesson, students may take home their storyboards and retell the story to a sibling, parent, or caregiver. As they retell the story, they can engage listeners in making predictions about what comes next. Educators should review this process just before students take home their storyboards.

EXTENSION

Students can compose piggyback texts based on the Numeroff/Bond stories. They can challenge classmates to use a storyboard graphic organizer or an electronic cartoon maker such as ToonDoo.com to make predictions about each other's student-made texts.

LESSON PLAN 6.2

Reading Comprehension Strategy Four

Making Predictions and Inferences

Reading Development Level: Advancing

Instructional Strategies

Cues, Notemaking, and Cooperative Learning

Lesson Length

2 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to infer the meanings of Spanish words and to make predictions about plot while reading a predominantly English text.

Objectives

After reading two or more books from the Chato series, students will be able to

1. Infer Spanish word meanings from their context and compare their inferences with the definitions found in the glossary.
2. Combine evidence in the text with their own background knowledge to make and record predictions as they read the text.
3. Record evidence or predictions as notes.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Chato's Kitchen, *Chato and the Party Animals*, and *Chato Goes Cruisin'*, by Gary Soto, illustrated by Susan Guevera (multiple copies of *Chato and the Party Animals* for partner work)

Graphic organizers: 6.2 Teacher Resource: Vocabulary Cues and Predictions/Inferences Graphic Organizer for *Chato's Kitchen*, 6.2 Vocabulary Cues and Predictions/Inferences Graphic Organizer for *Chato and the Party Animals*, 6.2 Teacher Resource: Vocabulary Cues and Predictions/Inferences Graphic Organizer for *Chato and the Party Animals*

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators model the strategy and then divide the class in half for the guided practice. If multiple copies of the book are available and students are able to read the texts independently, students can conduct the guided practice in small groups with educators monitoring.

Assessment

The students' partner work assesses their ability to make predictions and inferences before and during reading. Educators should set criteria for assessing the completeness of graphic organizers.

Standards

Reading keywords: make or draw inferences; use context to determine the relevant meaning of a word; locate specific information by using organizational features of text (glossary); describe the cultural aspects found in cross-cultural literature

Social studies keywords: use stories to describe past events and cultures; examples of individual actions, character, and values

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Use prior or background knowledge as a context for new learning. (1.1.2)
- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
- Collaborate with others to exchange ideas, develop new understandings, make decisions, and solve problems. (2.1.5)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Show the book jacket of *Chato's Kitchen*, the mentor text for this lesson. *Chato* rhymes with *gato*. *Gato* is a Spanish word that means "cat." How can one infer that the cat is the main character in this book? Define the word *inference* as a conclusion drawn from clues or evidence in the text plus background knowledge. Look at the back jacket of the hardcover book. Notice the words written on the signs. Ask: "Are these English words? Where do you see Spanish words? If you do not speak, read, or write in Spanish, how do you know what Spanish words mean?"

Discuss the idea of using clues plus background knowledge or experience like a detective uses clues and prior experiences to solve crimes. Ask students to think of themselves as word detectives as they infer the meanings of Spanish words and draw inferences about the meaning "between the lines" or make predictions about what will happen next in the story. (Educators can dress as detectives to dramatize this connection.) Post this formula: Stop + Examine Clues + Connect to Background Knowledge = Make Inferences or Predictions.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Infer Spanish word meanings from their context.
2. Compare inferences with definitions found in the glossary.
3. Make and record predictions about what will happen next while reading.

PRESENTATION

Cues: Project and read through the Spanish words on the 6.2 Vocabulary Cues and Predictions/Inferences Graphic Organizer for *Chato's Kitchen*. Ask students to infer the meanings of the words by relating them to English words. (If there are Spanish speakers/readers in the class, give them the opportunity to share the meaning of each word during the reading.) Record students' inferences as notes. Review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Open the book to the glossary and Chato's menu. Notice there is a list of Spanish words and their English translations (see the 6.2 Teacher Resource: Vocabulary Cues and Predictions/Inferences Graphic Organizer for *Chato's Kitchen*).

While reading, infer the meaning of the Spanish words by their context, how they are used in the sentence and in the story. (Do not consult Spanish-speaking classmates or the glossary until after students have attempted inferences. If the temporary meaning suffices, ask listeners to wait until the end of the reading to consult the Spanish-language experts or the glossary.) Also, make predictions about what will happen next while reading the story.

One educator reads *Chato's Kitchen* while the other records inferences about Spanish words and predictions about the story on a class-size graphic organizer. Educators use think-alouds to model inferring Spanish word meanings. (If there are other words unknown to the listeners, model the process of inferring their meanings and add them to the graphic organizer.)

Stop to think aloud and make predictions about the story plot. Think aloud about why this is a good time to make a prediction. Clarify the connections among evidence in the text, background knowledge, and making a prediction. Record evidence, background knowledge, and predictions in notemaking format on the class-size graphic organizer.

CLOSURE

After reading, revisit the Spanish words. Ask Spanish-speaking students to provide the meanings of words they know, or consult the glossary. Compare the inferred meanings with the definitions given by classmates or those found in the glossary. Review the predictions. Were they logical?

DAY 2**PRESENTATION**

Divide the class in half. Partner students and give each team a 6.2 Vocabulary Cues and Predictions/Inferences Graphic Organizer for *Chato and the Party Animals*. Each educator works with half the class to read *Chato and the Party Animals*. The educator reads aloud or, if students can read this text on their own, provide them with a copy for every team of two (see the 6.2 Teacher Resource: Vocabulary Cues and Predictions/Inferences Graphic Organizer for *Chato and the Party Animals*).

Review the process used by word and story detectives: Stop + Examine Clues + Connect to Background Knowledge = Make Inferences or Predictions. If necessary, review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Review the following practice procedures:

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Read the Spanish words and infer their meanings before reading.
2. Read the story and stop at Spanish words.

3. Think-pair-share and take turns recording the inferred meanings on the graphic organizer.
4. Make predictions while reading and record them as notes on the graphic organizer.
5. Review Spanish words and record definitions from classmates or from the glossary.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' ability to infer the meanings of Spanish words and make predictions by combining evidence in the text and their own background knowledge. Educators make sure that partners are taking turns as they record their inferences. They also monitor students' ability to know when to pause the reading to make predictions about the plot.

CLOSURE

Regroup the entire class of students in groups composed of two partner teams. Students compare their inferences and predictions. Ask: "When did readers first predict that the mice would one-up the cat?"

REFLECTION

How do readers make inferences about the meanings of words in texts? Does this apply only to non-English words? How do readers make predictions? How do inferences and predictions help readers comprehend texts?

EXTENSION

Using the same process, educators can challenge students to use inferences and predictions while reading the third title in the Chato series, *Chato Goes Cruisin'*. In addition, this book includes three-panel cartoons. Use sticky notes to cover all or part of the third panel. Ask students to record predictions on the sticky notes before reading or viewing the third panel.

LESSON PLAN 6.3

Reading Comprehension Strategy Four

Making Predictions and Inferences

Reading Development Level: Advanced

Instructional Strategies

Cues, Advance Organizers, and Notemaking

Lesson Length

2–4 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to make inferences during and after reading historical fiction, biography, or informational picture books in order to determine individual themes for the story by combining evidence in the text with readers' background knowledge.

Objectives

After reading *Freedom Summer* and a historical fiction picture book from a thematic text set, students will be able to

1. Determine when to pause the reading to make an inference or prediction.
2. Combine specific evidence from the text with their background knowledge to make inferences.
3. Record evidence, background knowledge, and inferences in preparation for crafting original one-sentence themes.
4. Use notemaking format when appropriate.
5. Craft one-sentence themes.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Freedom Summer, by Deborah Wiles, illustrated by Jerome Lagarrigue

Goin' Someplace Special, by Patricia McKissack, illustrated by Jerry Pinkney

Teammates, by Peter Golenbock, illustrated by Paul Bacon

The Unbreakable Code, by Sara Hoagland Hunter, illustrated by Julia Miner

Voices of the Alamo, by Sherry Garland, illustrated by Ron Himler

Graphic organizers: 6.3 Anticipation Guide: Possible One-Sentence Themes, 6.3 Teacher Resource:

Evidence–Background Knowledge–Inference Category Matrix, 6.3 Evidence–Background

Knowledge–Inference Category Matrix

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

While one educator reads the mentor text, the other records both educators' evidence and inferences during and after reading on a class-size category matrix. After reviewing the evidence, background knowledge, and inferences, each educator proposes a theme for the book. Educators jointly monitor students' partner or small-group guided practice.

Assessment

The students' category matrices show their use of evidence, background knowledge, and inferences to construct themes that indicate deep comprehension. Educators should set criteria for assessing the completeness of graphic organizers.

Standards

Reading keywords: make inferences; predictions; analyze for story elements (theme)

Social studies keywords: Recognize the relationship of events and people; discuss the connections between current events and historical events

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Use prior or background knowledge as a context for new learning. (1.1.2)
- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

What is a theme? Brainstorm possible themes for stories with which students are familiar. The following are two possible examples.

Story Title

“Little Red Riding Hood”

“The Tortoise and the Hare”

Possible Theme

Heed the warnings of your elders.

Don't talk to strangers.

Slow and steady wins the race.

You haven't won until you cross the finish line.

It is quite rare that an author writes, “The theme of this book is . . .” If the author does not tell readers the theme, then readers must read “between the lines” to discover a theme for themselves. Ask: “How do readers determine themes? Is there only one possible theme for every book?” Collaboratively construct a definition of *theme*. (Example: A theme is the deeper meaning that a reader gives to a story.)

Distribute the 6.3 Anticipation Guide: Possible One-Sentence Themes. Ask students to read the possible one-sentence themes suggested for the book *Freedom Summer*. Under the “before reading” column,

circle whether they agree or disagree with each statement. Let students know that they will reread and reassess the validity of the statements after reading the book as well.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Decide when to pause to make an inference or prediction.
2. Combine specific evidence from the text with background knowledge to make inferences.
3. Record evidence, background knowledge, and inferences as notes (when possible).
4. Craft a one-sentence theme at the end of the reading.

PRESENTATION

Project a class-size 6.3 Evidence–Background Knowledge–Inference Category Matrix. Define each category. Evidence is “on the line” information; inferences are “between the lines” ideas. Discuss how inferences are constructed. Let students know that they will be using inferences to determine a theme for this book (see the 6.3 Teacher Resource: Evidence–Background Knowledge–Inference Category Matrix).

One educator reads the mentor text *Freedom Summer* while the other records evidence, background knowledge, and inferences. Pause the reading to make an inference or prediction. Ask: “When do readers pause to make inferences?” Readers pause to make inferences and predictions when they are unclear about the meaning of a word, phrase, or idea. Readers also pause when they think the author or illustrator has given them a clue to what will happen next. Educators think aloud to share why they paused the reading. They make notes on the matrix to record evidence in the text, their background knowledge, and their inferences. Review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra).

At the end of the reading, each educator shares how he used the evidence in the text and his own background to make an inference and suggest a one-sentence theme. The other educator records the process on the matrix.

Ask the students to revisit the anticipation guide. Reread it. Did any event or the experiences of any character cause them to change their mind? Circle *agree* or *disagree* in the “after reading” column.

Students then prepare to compose a one-sentence theme for *Freedom Summer*. They can work individually or with a partner.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Select a piece of evidence from the text and record it on the graphic organizer.
2. Connect the evidence with background knowledge and record a note about it.
3. Restate one of the possible themes or compose an original one-sentence theme based on the inference.

CLOSURE

Students share their themes in small groups or with the entire class. Read the author’s note found at the beginning of the book, which explains her motivation for writing this story.

Booktalk the historical fiction titles from the text set. Ask students to record their first- and second-choice books.

DAY 2

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

Same as previous. Note: Depending on the number of books available, divide the class into partners or small groups based on their preferences and the educators’ judgments about cooperative groupings.

PRESENTATION

Distribute books and provide an individual 6.3 Evidence–Background Knowledge–Inference Category Matrix to each student.

Review ideas about when readers pause in their reading to make inferences and predictions. Review how inferences are made. Review the class-size 6.3 Evidence–Background Knowledge–Inference Category Matrix. Ask students to list the steps for making an inference and put them on the board for students' reference.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

Same as previous.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' reading, pausing to make inferences and record information on the category matrix. Monitor for comprehensible notes and notemaking format. After students complete the reading, educators support them in crafting themes.

CLOSURE

After reading, ask students to share the process of making inferences and developing one-sentence themes. Students can share their themes in small groups or with the entire class unless educators decide to engage students in the extension of this lesson.

REFLECTION

How did making inferences during and after reading keep us engaged with the text? How did inferences help us craft one-sentence themes? Do all readers make the same inferences? Do all readers come away from a text with the same theme?

EXTENSION

Students can use their one-sentence themes to create an anticipation guide and exchange it with a group that has not yet read the book they explored. The groups can be paired and then repeat the process of this lesson. After reading, inferring, and crafting themes, groups can come together to share their interpretations of the texts.

Reading Comprehension Strategy Five

Determining Main Ideas

But the important thing about a spoon is that you eat with it.

—From *The Important Book*, by Margaret Wise Brown, illustrated by Leonard Weisgard

COLLABORATIVE TEACHING IN THE AGE OF ACCOUNTABILITY

MAXIMIZING YOUR IMPACT

- » **Strategy One: Activating or Building Background Knowledge**
- » **Strategy Two: Using Sensory Images**
- » **Strategy Three: Questioning**
- » **Strategy Four: Making Predictions and Inferences**
- » **Strategy Five: Determining Main Ideas**
- » Strategy Six: Using Fix-up Options
- » Strategy Seven: Synthesizing

As information specialists, school librarians are acutely aware of the challenges students face when they are confronted with an excess of information. It isn't easy for proficient adult readers to sift through the daily barrage of data to determine what is important; for children it can be truly daunting. Today's students, "millennials" who were born into the Information Age, may not be aware of the distinctions that can and should be drawn between data, information, knowledge, and wisdom. To be useful, data must be organized into something accessible as information. Information is only a set of facts until someone determines its importance, internalizes it, and turns it into knowledge through use. And though we may not all agree on the manifestations of wisdom, we do know it requires an accumulation of knowledge and the ability to discern connections and relationships. Sorting out these distinctions is critical for students, for workers, and for citizens of this century. It is important that educators scaffold students' formal experiences with mining information so they can transfer this knowledge to outside-of-school experiences.

Main ideas are always dependent on the purpose of a reading. If students are reading fictional texts and exploring story elements, then characters, setting, plot, and theme are the main ideas; figure 3-3 shows a matrix for studying story elements using Cinderella variants. Although there may be correct answers for some story elements in a narrative frame, themes are inferred main ideas (as noted in chapter

6). When different readers interpret the text, they may determine different themes. Distinguishing what is most important from what is somewhat or less important requires readers to pass new information through their prior understandings. Readers must determine what can be forgotten and make judgments about what should be remembered and integrated into their schemas.

The reader's purpose for a reading lies at the center of this process. If someone is reading an informational text for the latest, most unusual scientific discovery to satisfy his own curiosity, he will most likely focus on a different main idea than if he were conducting research for a five-page report or studying for a science exam. If reading to find the main idea in a passage on a standardized test, the reader will look for the best answer from the test maker's perspective. While practicing and applying this strategy, readers have the opportunity to use evaluation, a higher-order thinking skill.

Main ideas can be determined at the whole-text, chapter, page, passage, paragraph, or sentence (word) level. In *Mosaic of Thought*, Keene and Zimmerman (1997) discuss *considerate* and *inconsiderate* texts in the context of readers searching for main ideas. A *considerate* text is one that provides support or scaffolds readers' access to the important parts; *inconsiderate* texts do not. In many fictional texts, clearly presented story elements offer such a framework. There are main and minor characters. There is a setting that includes time and place. There is a plot that rises and falls with a clear beginning, middle, and end. There is a conflict and some sort of resolution. There is a central theme that ties the story together. When readers understand the narrative frame that gives these texts structure, they are able to use it as a guide to determine the main ideas. Story maps and character maps are two graphic organizers that can help readers develop a strong sense of narrative structure. (Readers use these tools in the advancing lesson in this chapter.)

Whereas fiction texts are structured around story elements, expository texts may be built around a dominant theme, concept, or key idea. Some informational texts for children are written with a narrative frame

that supports readers as they apply their background knowledge about how stories work, which they developed while hearing oral stories and reading fiction. More traditional informational texts include other considerate structures that help readers determine the main ideas from the author's (or book designer's) point of view. Text features such as tables of contents, indexes, time lines, and glossaries point the way to main ideas. Graphics, including illustrations, photographs, charts, maps, tables, captions, and labels, support readers as they decide what is important. Headings and subheadings, font variations, and other print effects signal relationships and relative importance among the pieces of information presented.

Both fictional and informational texts use varying font size or style to alert readers to important ideas and concepts. Some texts of both kinds use predictable text structures such as sequencing, question and answer, cause and effect, or problem and solution to guide readers. Signal words indicate which structure is being used. For example, these are some words that indicate sequencing: *first*, *next*, *then*, and *finally*. Once students become aware of these reader supports, they can incorporate them into their own student-authored texts. Using these structures in their own writing may be one of the best ways for students to practice and demonstrate mastery of text structures.

In *The Important Book*, author Margaret Wise Brown tells readers the most important thing about a spoon and provides details, the less important things, as well.

The important thing
about a spoon is
that you eat with it.
It's like a shovel,
You hold it with your hand,
You can put it in your mouth,
It isn't flat,
It's hollow,
And it spoons things up.
But the important thing
about a spoon is
that you eat with it.

Brown devotes double-page spreads to daisies, rain, grass, and more, repeating the pattern of sharing the important thing, giving other details, and restating the important thing at the end of each entry. This poetic treatment of main ideas and supporting details can be an aid to educators when they first explain this strategy to students.

In school-based learning experiences, educators who clearly establish learning objectives for literary engagements provide a scaffold that supports students in determining main ideas. In teacher-directed lessons, educators give students clear purposes for reading. Educators must also demonstrate that, as the purpose for reading changes, the reader's focus changes as well. Reading a fictional text in order to study characterization requires a different focus from reading the same text to determine a theme. (All of the sample lessons in this chapter include extensions that suggest a different purpose for reading the same texts.) Making underlying decisions visible, such as the purposes for reading, is especially important for English language learners. It is also critical to give students, at all grade levels and levels of reading proficiency, opportunities to determine and to set their own purposes for reading, a lifelong learning skill.

As we teach determining main ideas, educators model and then invite readers to make judgments about which ideas are most important and which are less important. Main ideas are the foundation on which the details rest. Like an elephant that must bear its significant weight on strong legs, we ask readers to think of main ideas as the base that holds up the supporting details. Readers must learn how to prioritize information as an essential skill in reading comprehension as well as in information literacy. They can use main ideas to develop their schemas and to shore up their ability to store and recall information.

HOW TO TEACH THE STRATEGY

School librarians will recognize the connection between determining main ideas and information literacy. Readers cannot and should not try to record,

remember, or integrate every bit of information they see or read into their schemas. Main ideas give learners the opportunity to pass judgment on the value of information and use it effectively. Main ideas help students “organize knowledge so it is useful” (AASL 2007, 2.1.2).

While mining for relevant information, readers must distill the essential from a sentence, an image, a passage, a paragraph, a chapter, or an entire text. At the sentence level, students may be inferring and learning the meaning of new vocabulary while determining main ideas. At the paragraph level, students may be learning about the academic English discourse pattern, in which the topic sentence presents the main idea and the concluding sentence restates it. With opportunities to practice this strategy at all of these levels of complexity, students can build their abilities to separate main ideas from supporting details. Here are a few of the questions that can help students determine main ideas:

- What was my purpose for reading?
- What new ideas or facts did I learn?
- What do I want to remember from this text?
- What will I do with this information?
- What was the author's or illustrator's purpose in writing or illustrating this text?

Determining main ideas requires that readers ignore some information. With a clear purpose in mind, a reader can decide what information to disregard. Such information may be superfluous to his purposes, or it may be information he already knows and therefore does not need to record. As he evaluates this new information, the reader may choose to substitute a new word with a more familiar term from his prior knowledge vocabulary in this content area. Finally, he will be in a position to consider the remaining information that meets his purposes and determine a main idea or ideas to record and store in his memory, a main idea that may modify or change his schema on this topic. His main idea is a judgment; he should be able to defend his opinion (figure 7-1 below shows an example of this process).

Students who are comfortable with the narrative frame may need extra support when interacting with expository writing. Guidelines for reading informational texts can be posted in the library and in the classroom. Educators can model the following sequence and give students many opportunities to practice these strategies:

- Set a purpose for reading.
- Preview the covers and inside book flaps; book walk to read the illustrations.
- Preview the text features (main ideas): titles, subtitles, captions, charts, maps, time lines, and graphs.
- As you read, slow down when you meet new vocabulary or difficult concepts.
- Use the glossary.
- Stop to talk about your reading, make notes, and write about what you are learning.
- Reread or use other fix-up strategies when the meaning isn't clear.

A critical part of working with main ideas involves recording significant learning while reading or viewing. Educators can post a notemaking chart such as the one in figure 2-2 (also available as a web extra) in both the library and classrooms to remind students of the goal of notemaking and the types of notes. The school library literature is rich with models for making notes. In *Classroom Instruction That Works: Research-Based Strategies for Increasing Student Achievement* (Marzano, Pickering, and Pollock 2001), notemaking is highlighted and elaborated with different formats: teacher-prepared notes, informal outlines, webbing, and a combination of outline and webbing. A variation of teacher-prepared notes is a skeleton outline, which provides a scaffold for students by leaving blanks for them to fill in as they listen, read, or view. The “trash-’n’-treasure” notemaking method offered by Barbara A. Jansen is one that begins with skimming for keywords to answer researchable questions (Jansen 2007). *Tools for Teaching Content Literacy* (Allen 2004) offers a graphic organizer for the Cornell Note-Taking System. The English

Companion website is one source for a wide variety of notemaking formats (www.englishcompanion.com/classroom/notemaking.htm).

Shared notemaking is one way to start students on the path of making effective notes. Educators should use think-alouds to demonstrate how they distill the main ideas from a passage and then show students their process for recording notes that clearly reflect what they learned. Students should have many experiences working with partners and in small groups to talk about texts, determine main ideas, and then record notes on group or individual notemaking sheets.

The next step after making notes is to use them to summarize learning. By definition, summaries focus on main ideas. Again, educators can first model summarizing as they review group notes and then compose whole-class summaries of the main ideas found in the notes. Practice in writing partner and small-group summaries helps students prepare to summarize independently. When conducting long-term inquiry or research projects, readers can be asked to summarize their learning at the end of notemaking sessions. These summaries serve as formative assessments of students' progress toward understanding the topics under investigation.

Using an excerpt from *Wild Dogs: Past and Present* (Halls), figure 7-1 shows an example of the notemaking and summarizing process. The purpose for reading is clearly stated at the beginning. The learner first reads through the entire excerpt, then reviews the purpose for reading and reads through the excerpt a second time. During the second reading, he deletes information that is already known or facts that don't fit the purpose for reading. Next, he can make substitutions that explain vocabulary or concepts. In this example, the page number for the taxonomy chart was added. What remains of the excerpt are the main ideas. Students can practice this process on photocopies of texts, deleting unimportant information by striking it through with a pencil, adding substitutions with pen, and using highlighters to flag main ideas.

After engaging in this process, readers then use the main ideas to make notes in their own words. These

Fig. 7-1 Deleting, Substituting, Notemaking, Determining Main Ideas, and New Questions

Text: *Wild Dogs: Past and Present*, by Kelly Milner Halls

Purpose for Reading

To learn general information about wild dogs and choose one for further research

Excerpt

"When scientists group an organism, they follow a system that describes it in a general-to-specific manner. The system is called a taxonomy. All dogs—wolves, foxes, jackals, dingos, wild dogs, and domesticated dogs—are in the Canidae family.

"Being in the same family means that in the most basic ways, all dogs are alike. They are mammals, which means they give birth to live young, nurse their young with milk, and are covered with fur or hair. They are carnivores, or meat-eaters. (Some also eat plants when they are hungry, but meat is their primary food.) They are four-footed animals that walk on their toes and do not (usually) have retractable claws. They have well-developed teeth specialized for cutting and tearing. Up to this point, a dog is a dog is a dog.

"Beyond the basics, though, dogs begin to differ. That is where the taxonomy gets more specific. The genus and species together form the scientific name for each different kind of animal.

"For example, the gray wolf's scientific name is *Canis lupus*, Latin for 'wolf dog.' The coyote is *Canis latrans*, Latin for 'barking dog.' The red fox is *Vulpes vulpes*, Latin for 'fox fox.' That means that the gray wolf and coyote are more genetically alike than either of them is to the red fox" (p. 12).

Deletions and [Substitutions]

"When scientists group an organism, they follow a system that describes it in a general-to-specific manner. The system is called a **taxonomy**. [Chart on page 13] **All dogs—wolves, foxes, jackals, dingos, wild dogs, and domesticated dogs—are in the Canidae family.**

"Being in the same family means that in the most basic ways, all dogs are alike. They are mammals, which means they give birth to live young, nurse their young with milk, and are covered with fur or hair. They are **carnivores**, or meat-eaters. (Some also eat plants when they are hungry, but meat is their primary food.) They are four-footed animals that walk on their toes and **do not (usually) have retractable claws**. They have well-developed teeth specialized for cutting and tearing. Up to this point, a dog is a dog is a dog.

"Beyond the basics, though, dogs begin to differ. That is where the taxonomy gets more specific. The **genus and species together form the scientific name** for each different kind of animal.

"For example, the gray wolf's scientific name is *Canis lupus*, Latin for 'wolf dog.' The coyote is *Canis latrans*, Latin for 'barking dog.' The red fox is *Vulpes vulpes*, Latin for 'fox fox.' That means that the gray wolf and coyote are more genetically alike than either of them is to the red fox" (p. 12).

Notes

Taxonomy—p. 13

All—Canidae family—common characteristics

Carnivorous mammals (usually no retractable claws)

Scientific name = genus + species—shows relationships and dif. char.

Main Ideas

All dogs are in the Canidae family and have common characteristics. The genus and species (scientific names) show how they are related to each other and how they are different from other wild dogs.

New Questions

Which wild dogs have retractable claws?

What is the scientific name for my pet dog?

notes are in the formats listed on the notemaking chart. From the notes, readers can compose a summary in their own words and in complete sentences. Students are also encouraged to record their questions as they make notes or summarize. These questions help guide learners as they read on. In this example, the student may decide to focus his study on a wild dog with retractable claws. When he conducts further research, he will learn that some foxes have semiretractable claws and can leave clawless footprints.

Notemaking and summarizing are often referred to as *study skills*, but they are two of the most powerful skills students can develop to identify the main ideas of their learning (Marzano, Pickering, and Pollock 2001, 48). School librarians must become expert teachers of writing in whatever writing process or method is used by the classroom teacher colleagues in their schools. When a school is in the process of exploring or adopting new strategies, it is paramount that the librarian be part of the discussion and participate in or provide professional development in the area of writing. Reading and writing are the two sides of the literacy coin; one cannot and should not be separated from the other.

MAKING LITERATURE CONNECTIONS

Any text related to the curriculum or to students' interests can be useful in teaching main ideas. As students are developing this strategy, educators should provide them with clear purposes and objectives for reading and engage them with considerate texts that spark their curiosity. It is important to use informational books as read-alouds. Many elementary students do not get enough opportunities to hear fluent readers reading and modeling strategies with expository text. With added emphasis on content-area reading in middle and high school, especially in science and social studies, elementary educators must prepare students to be successful readers of informational texts.

When students are searching for main ideas to answer questions posed by educators or questions of their own making, the structural support found

in high-quality informational books offers them a scaffold for locating and determining main ideas. Graphic organizers, such as the 9.2 Informational Book Self-Monitoring Graphic Organizer (web extra and figure 9-1 below), assist readers as they notice which features of a particular informational book best support their learning. School librarians should be aware of the structural features offered in expository texts as they build their collections. Many publishers offer these texts in series, which means that students can develop schemas for a particular text format and anticipate where and how to locate main ideas in all the titles of a particular series. The Discovery Library series published by Rourke, National Geographic's Reading Expeditions, and the Reading Quest series by Newbridge Publishing are some of the many considerate texts in series format available to elementary school libraries and classrooms.

A growing number of books published for children are multigenre books. The format of some of these texts can offer readers interesting insight into the main ideas (from the author's or illustrator's perspective). *Song of the Water Boatman, and Other Pond Poems* (Sidman/Prange) and *Night Wonders* (Peddicord) are two examples in which poetry and expository text are offered side by side. While the poetic print may elicit a more aesthetic response in the reader, the expository print provides the facts behind the expressive language used in the poems. Combined with stunning illustrations, these components clearly point to the main ideas on the page. Figure 7-2 shows an example from the print information in *Song of the Water Boatman, and Other Pond Poems*.

Any text can support teaching and learning this strategy, and it is important to mention that all types of texts should be used. Although teaching strategies through children's literature is the focus of this book, effective support for this strategy can be found in magazine and newspaper articles, pamphlets and brochures, all forms of electronic media, and textbooks. Whenever possible, text sets created to support learning this strategy should include all of these formats. Textbooks in particular can and should be used to teach determining main ideas. These texts are often written above students' proficient reading levels and

do not always take readers' background knowledge into consideration. To provide scaffolds for reading these texts, educators can construct graphic organizers that help readers focus on the main ideas found in keywords, headings, subheadings, captions, and other supports before, during, and after reading. Librarians should consider their role in helping teachers teach and students learn to read content-area textbooks effectively and fluently. A textbook is, in fact, a reference book and can be integrated into research and inquiry projects along with other reference resources.

CHILDREN'S LITERATURE CITED

Starred titles are used in the lesson plans.

- **Carlo and the Really Nice Librarian*, by Jessica Spanyol
- **I Want to Be a Librarian*, by Daniel Liebman
- **Imaginative Inventions*, by Charise Mericle Harper
- **The Inventor's Times: Real-Life Stories of 30 Amazing Creations*, by Dan Driscoll, James

Fig. 7-2 Determining Main Ideas with Multigenre Text

Text: *Song of the Water Boatman, and Other Pond Poems*, by Joyce Sidman, illustrated by Beckie Prange

Purpose for Reading

To learn about pond ecology

Excerpt

Poem

"Here hunts the heron, queen of the pond,
that spears the fish
that swallows the frog
that gulps the bug
that nabs the nymph
that drinks the flea
that eats the algae, green and small,
in the depths of the summer pond."

Excerpt

Expository text—Food Chain

"Life in the pond begins with plants, which manufacture food from the sun. Plants become food for plant-eating (herbivorous) animals like the tiny water flea or the water boatman. These small animals and bugs are eaten by bigger bugs, which are eaten by meat-eating (carnivorous) animals like minnows and tadpoles. Bigger fish eat the smaller fish. And the heron, with its keen eyes and sharp beak, eats whatever it wants."

Notes

Sample pond food chain: heron→bigger fish→minnows→bigger bugs→fleas→algae

Some bugs—herbivores (eat plants)

Some bugs—carnivores (eat smaller bugs)

Main Ideas/Summary

Plants, herbivores, and carnivores make a food chain in the pond. Pond plants and animals provide food for other animals.

Question

What eats the heron?

Zigarelli, and the staff of the Inventor's Times

**The Kid Who Invented the Popsicle, and Other Surprising Stories about Inventions*, by Don L. Wulffson

**The Kid Who Invented the Trampoline, and More Surprising Stories about Inventions*, by Don L. Wulffson

**The Kids' Invention Book*, by Arlene Erlbach

**A Mother's Journey*, by Sandra Markle, illustrated by Alan Marks

Night Wonders, by Jane Ann Peddicord

Song of the Water Boatman, and Other Pond Poems, by Joyce Sidman, illustrated by Beckie Prange

Wild Dogs: Past and Present, by Kelly Milner Halls

LESSON PLANS

These lessons focus on determining importance with increasing sophistication using different research-based instructional strategies. A purpose for reading is established for each lesson, and each extension changes the purpose for reading, which then changes the readers' focus. Whenever possible, the lessons should include conferencing with individuals and small groups of students. It is important for educators to probe students' thinking in order to support their progress using the main ideas strategy. Because there is rarely one main idea in any given text, educators must respect students' judgments and give students opportunities to explain the rationale for their choices.



LESSON PLAN 7.1

Reading Comprehension Strategy Five

Determining Main Ideas

Reading Development Level: Emerging

Instructional Strategies

Cues and Questions, Classifying, Summarizing (Orally)

Lesson Length

1 session

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to determine the topic of a text set and to categorize fiction and informational books. In this case, determining if books are fiction or informational is the purpose for reading, and therefore these are the main ideas. Students transfer math and science vocabulary to the reading/language arts/library learning context. Combined with the extension, this lesson demonstrates that the purpose for reading makes a difference in what readers pay attention to while they read.

Objectives

At the end of this lesson, students will be able to

1. Determine the topic of a text set.
2. Read for a specific purpose.
3. Categorize books as fiction or informational.
4. Create a graph to show classification and make notes on a graphic organizer.
5. Comprehend and use math-science vocabulary (*arrange, group, same, different, category*) in the language arts/library context.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Carlo and the Really Nice Librarian, by Jessica Spanyol

I Want to Be a Librarian, by Dan Liebman

Topical text set on libraries and librarians—up to four in each category (fiction and informational books)

Topical text sets on high-interest topics, one for each small group—not more than four in each category (fiction and informational)

Graphic organizers: 7.1 Fiction and Informational Book Summary Sheet, 7.1 Graph

Materials: Sticky notes (1½-by-2-inch size, two different colors) and rocks of two colors, sizes, shapes, or types

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators conduct the entire lesson as a team to model reading for a specific purpose. They also model how vocabulary used in one context can be transferred to another discipline and demonstrate collaboration and presentation skills. Educators cofacilitate small-group work. Each educator facilitates small-group oral presentations for half the class.

Assessment

Students' group graphs and presentations to the class using the key vocabulary show their understanding of the main ideas for this lesson—determining topics and categories. For self-assessment, after all groups have shared, students can reflect on their graphs and presentations in discussion with their small group.

Standards

Reading keywords: determine if a literary selection is fiction or informational; acquire and use vocabulary in relevant contexts

Listening and speaking keywords: use effective vocabulary and logical organization to relate or summarize ideas; present a report

Math keywords: number sense; make a model to represent a given whole number 0 through 100

Science keywords: analyze; organize (e.g., compare, classify, and sequence) objects, organisms, and events according to various characteristics

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)

PROCESS

MOTIVATION

Show a group of rocks. How are they the same? How are they different? Choose a category (color, size, shape, or type) and arrange them into two piles.

Show the covers of the books from the libraries and librarians topical text set. How are these books the same? Define the word *topic*. All the books are about libraries and librarians. How are they different? Did you know that books are arranged on the library shelves in a special way to help children and teachers find them? Just like there are different categories of rocks, there are different categories of books. These categories help people locate the books they are looking for.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Name the topic.
2. Categorize books as fiction or informational.
3. Use sticky notes to label the categories.
4. Make a graph to show categories.
5. Use these words when presenting: *arrange*, *group*, *same*, *different*, and *category*.

PRESENTATION

Show the two mentor books. One is a fiction book and one is an informational book. Note that we read different kinds of books for different purposes. Share the purpose for reading in this lesson: to determine if books are fiction or informational books.

Taking turns, one educator conducts a book walk of *Carlo and the Really Nice Librarian*. The other educator conducts a book walk of *I Want to Be a Librarian*. Project the 7.1 Fiction and Informational Book Summary Sheet and fill it in during the discussion of fiction and informational books. Ask: “What are the characteristics of a fiction book? What are the characteristics of an informational book?” Show the letters and numbers on the spine of each book. Note that the markings on the spine are categories: fiction (letters only) or informational (numbers before letters). Other characteristics of fiction books: sometimes include talking animals, made-up stories, illustrations often drawings or paintings. Other characteristics of informational books: true information, real events, sometimes illustrated with photographs.

Using the titles, book jackets, illustrations, and spine labels, categorize the libraries and librarians text set with sticky notes of two different colors. Arrange the books into two piles. Project the 7.1 Graph and place the sticky notes on the graph. Think aloud and use the terms *arrange*, *group*, *same*, *different*, and *category*. Count the number of fiction books by writing numbers on the sticky notes. Do the same for the informational books.

Distribute one text set per table group. Tell the students that they will be working in small groups to determine the topic, categorize, and make a group graph of the text sets on their table.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Read the book titles.
2. Look at the covers and spine labels.
3. Book walk.
4. Name the topic.
5. Use two different color sticky notes to categorize the books into two groups.
6. Make a group graph and number the sticky notes.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators support groups that need help reading the book titles. They ask students to hypothesize if the books are fiction or informational before looking at the spines. Educators support students as they group their books and create graphs.

PRESENTATION

Educators model presenting their graph for the libraries and librarians text set. They follow the student presentation procedures.

STUDENT PRESENTATION PROCEDURES

1. Decide on two presenters.
2. Name the members of the group.
3. Give the topic or main idea of the text set.
4. Read and explain the group graph.
5. Choose one book from each category and tell why it is fiction or informational.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators help the groups rehearse their presentations.

CLOSURE

Divide the class in half. Each educator facilitates a group. Groups present their graphs to half the class using the target vocabulary. Review the characteristics of fiction and informational books. For self-assessment, after all groups have shared, students can reflect on their graphs and presentations in discussion with their small group.

REFLECTION

What was our purpose for reading these books? How did the purpose help us determine the main idea—fiction or informational books? If we change the purpose for reading, would we notice different things in the texts?

EXTENSIONS

Divide the class in half. Establish a new purpose for reading. This time focus on the theme (another kind of main idea) of each book. One educator reads *Carlo and the Really Nice Librarian*; one reads *I Want to Be a Librarian*. Each group composes a group theme for the book they heard and shares it with the entire class.

In the library, practice resource location skills related to these two broad categories: fiction and informational books.

LESSON PLAN 7.2

Reading Comprehension Strategy Five

Determining Main Ideas

Reading Development Level: Advancing

Instructional Strategies

Notemaking and Summarizing

Lesson Length

3 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to identify and make notes about the story elements in an informational book with a narrative frame. Students deepen their engagement with this text through a character study and by completing a character map and writing a character summary.

Objectives

After reading *A Mother's Journey*, students will be able to

1. Determine story elements in an informational book and record them on a story map.
2. Conduct a character analysis and record characteristics and evidence on a character map.
3. Retell the information using the story map and the character maps as prompts.
4. Compose a character summary and self-assess with a rubric.
5. Dramatize the characteristics of the mother penguin or read the character paragraph.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

A Mother's Journey, by Sandra Markle, illustrated Alan Marks

Emperor Penguin Pathfinder: <http://storytrail.com/Impact/Penguins.htm>

Graphic organizers: 7.2 Teacher Resource: Story Map, 7.2 Story Map, 7.2 Teacher Resource: Character Map, 7.2 Character Map, 7.2 Character Summary Paragraph and Presentation Rubric

7.2 Sample Character Summary Paragraph

Materials: Scratch paper and pencils for brainstorming

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators model determining main ideas and notemaking on a story map. They also model finding evidence from the text for a character study and collaborate to compose a sample character summary. Educators facilitate students' small-group work and conduct writing conferences with student partners.

Assessment

The students' story maps, character maps, character summaries, and summary rubrics serve as assessments.

Standards

Reading keywords: identify the main idea and supporting details in expository text; sequence a series of events; story or literary elements

Writing keywords: record information; write an expository paragraph with a topic sentence, supporting details, evidence, or relevant information

Science keywords: life cycles; interactions of living organisms with their environment; adaptations of animals that allow them to live in specific environments

Theater keywords: research information for a dramatic scene; sequence a drama

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
- Assess the quality and effectiveness of the learning product. (3.4.2)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Do not display the mentor book. Play audio of emperor penguins found as a link of the Emperor Penguin Pathfinder. Ask students to guess what makes that sound. Show the brief video about emperor penguins (also a link from the pathfinder).

Show the mentor text and read the title and the author's and illustrator's names. What do students already know about emperor penguins? Think-pair-share in groups of four. Collect background knowledge orally. Let students know the purpose for reading this book: to determine main ideas from an informational book that is told as a story.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Determine the main ideas.
2. Record them on a story map.
3. Retell the story/information in the book using the story map as a guide.

PRESENTATION

Project the 7.2 Story Map. While one educator reads the book, one records the educators' and students' notes on the story map (see the 7.2 Teacher Resource: Story Map). Teach or review types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Reinforce note types while recording on the story map.

Read the first page of the book. Educators think aloud to process information and make notes about the characters and setting. Use different colored markers to record notes for each story element.

Read to the page that ends: “But the closest food is in the open sea, more than 50 miles away.” Ask students to determine the problem in this story. Record it on the story map.

Educators think aloud about the main ideas found at the beginning of the story. Review the story to this point by book walking through the pages read so far. On the whiteboard, web ideas about the beginning of the story. Circle the main ideas. Identify items not circled as supporting details. Number the main ideas in order of occurrence in the story. Record notes on the story map.

Read to the page that ends: “But it is a zig-zag course that never takes her too far from the ice edge.” Conduct a book walk to review the middle pages of the book. Distribute story maps to each student. Students work in groups to web the main ideas of the middle of the story plot.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Web the main ideas on scratch paper.
2. Negotiate three to five main ideas and circle them.
3. Number the ideas in the order they happened in the book.
4. Record them on the story map.
5. Copy notes from the class story map.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor group work and help students negotiate main ideas from their brainstorm.

PRESENTATION

Educators fill in the middle plot section of the class story map using the ideas from the 7.2 Teacher Resource: Story Map. Continue reading until the end of the book. Repeat the procedure by book walking, brainstorming, circling, prioritizing, and recording on the class story map. Repeat the student practice procedures and the guided practice above.

CLOSURE

Lead a group discussion about how the problem in the story was solved. Educators add the plot ending and solution to the class story map. Review the purpose for reading this text. Educators model retelling the story elements using the class story map.

Students use their individual story maps to retell the story of the mother emperor penguin to a partner. Remind students to keep their focus on the main ideas: characters, setting, problem, plot (beginning, middle, and end), and solution.

DAY 2

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Determine four main characteristics of female emperor penguins.
2. Record two pieces of evidence from the text for each characteristic.
3. Write a one-paragraph summary describing the female emperor penguin.

PRESENTATION

Students work with a partner. Distribute a 7.2 Character Map to each student. Facilitate a discussion about the main character in the book. Brainstorm behaviors and qualities of the female emperor penguin. Record and save on the whiteboard (see the 7.2 Teacher Resource: Character Map).

Educators think aloud to complete one section of the character map. They choose one character trait from the brainstorm and cite two examples from the book of the mother penguin demonstrating that characteristic. Record ideas on the character map in notemaking format. Students then work with a partner to complete individual character maps for the female emperor penguin.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Write “female emperor penguin” in the center of the map.
2. Work with a partner to choose four characteristics.
3. For each characteristic, make notes on two examples from the book.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students for accurate examples of each characteristic and for their use of different types of notes.

PRESENTATION

Project the completed teacher resource character map. Distribute the 7.2 Character Summary Paragraph and Presentation Rubric, one per partner group. Educators provide an oral summary of the character map and then model writing a one-paragraph character summary (see the 7.2 Sample Character Summary Paragraph). Emphasize the sequence in the topic sentence and the order of the body sentences. Point out that the concluding sentence refers back to the main idea in the topic sentence.

Students work with a partner to write a one-paragraph character summary.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Practice an oral summary of the character map with a partner.
2. Compose a topic sentence with four characteristics.
3. Write one sentence that gives an example for each characteristic.
4. Keep the same order as the topic sentence.
5. Take turns writing with your partner.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor for cooperation and paragraph organization.

DAY 3**PRESENTATION**

Project the 7.2 Sample Character Summary Paragraph. Assess it with the 7.2 Character Summary Paragraph and Presentation Rubric. Model the presentation to the class, with one educator reading the paragraph while the other dramatizes the four characteristics of the mother penguin in sequence.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Self-assess the draft using the rubric.
2. Revise and edit the paragraph.

3. Each student writes a final copy of the summary paragraph.
4. Practice the presentation.
5. Each team turns in a character map, draft, and completed rubric.
6. Each student turns in an individual summary paragraph.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators provide writing conferences as needed.

CLOSURE

Divide the class in half, with each educator facilitating one group in order for student partners to share their presentations. Review the purpose for reading *A Mother's Journey*: to determine main ideas from an informational book written in story format. Students self-assess with the rubric, and educators jointly assess students using the same rubric.

REFLECTION

How does the purpose for reading influence what we pay attention to when we read? How do we determine main ideas when we read a story or an informational book told in story format? Can people determine different main ideas? What is a summary?

EXTENSION

Change the purpose for reading to collecting as many facts as possible about the emperor penguin. Provide access to a text set on emperor penguins, including websites. Students work in small groups and record facts in notemaking format on index cards or paper or electronic graphic organizers. Groups meet to review their facts. Quiz groups on emperor penguin facts using the numbered-heads-together method. Ask: "Did changing the purpose for reading change what you paid attention to when you read?"

LESSON PLAN 7.3

Reading Comprehension Strategy Five

Determining Main Ideas

Reading Development Level: Advanced

Instructional Strategies

Notemaking and Summarizing

Lesson Length

2 (or more) sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to learn how to determine main ideas in a text with a problem-and-solution text structure and to change the purpose for reading in order to note the change in the readers' focus.

Objectives

After reading *The Kids' Invention Book* and researching inventors, students will be able to

1. Determine main ideas in a problem-and-solution text structure.
2. Record notes and maintain a bibliographic record.
3. Use the writing process to compose a summary.
4. Self-assess using a rubric.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Imaginative Inventions, by Charise Mericle Harper

The Inventor's Times: Real-Life Stories of 30 Amazing Creations, by Dan Driscoll, James Zigarelli, and the staff of the Inventor's Times

The Kids' Invention Book, by Arlene Erlbach

The Kid Who Invented the Popsicle, and Other Surprising Stories about Inventions, by Don Wulffson

The Kid Who Invented the Trampoline, and More Surprising Stories about Inventions, by Don Wulffson

Graphic organizers: 7.3 Teacher Resource: Bibliography and Notemaking Graphic Organizer, 7.3

Bibliography and Notemaking Graphic Organizer, 7.3 Problem-and-Solution Summary Paragraph Rubric

7.3 Sample Problem-and-Solution Summary Paragraph

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators model determining main ideas, recording a bibliography entry, and making notes. One or both educators monitor students' research and notemaking.

Assessment

Students' completed bibliography and notemaking graphic organizers, problem-and-solution summary paragraphs, and rubrics show if they can identify the main ideas.

Standards

Reading keywords: identify the main ideas and support details in an expository text; draw valid conclusions from information presented in an expository text

Writing keywords: write a variety of expository forms (summary); write an information report that uses main ideas and relevant details

Science keywords: propose a solution, resource, or product that addresses a specific human, animal, or habitat need; design and construct a technological solution to a common problem or need using common materials

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
- Assess the quality and effectiveness of the learning product. (3.4.2)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Educators read pages 6 and 7 from *The Kids' Invention Book*. Think-pair-share: "Have you ever invented anything?" Ask for volunteers to share.

Educators take turns reading a selection of stories about inventions from *The Kid Who Invented the Popsicle*, such as the title story, "Ice-Cream Cone," "Sandwich," or "Velcro." Pair each reading with verse about the same inventions found in the book *Imaginative Inventions*. Let students know that they will be reading about different kid-made inventions. Students choose one inventor and invention to study and write a summary (optional: in preparation for creating their own solution to a common problem or need).

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Read about a kid inventor.
2. Make notes on the problem and solution (main ideas).
3. Write a summary with the main ideas.
4. Self-assess the summary using a rubric.

PRESENTATION

Project the 7.3 Bibliography and Notemaking Graphic Organizer (see the 7.3 Teacher Resource: Bibliography and Notemaking Graphic Organizer). Educators think aloud while locating bibliographic information and fill in the blanks for *The Kids' Invention Book*.

Review notemaking goals and types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Read pages 8 and 9 in *The Kids' Invention Book*. While one educator rereads, the other makes main ideas notes on the graphic organizer as they both think aloud. Stress noting the reference number and page number where the information was found.

Depending on the number of resources, divide the students into partners or small groups. If resources are scarce, this project can become a center rotation for students to come to the library to conduct their research with the librarian facilitating.

Students work with a partner or in small groups to choose an inventor, read, record bibliographic information, and make notes.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Skim the tables of contents or book walk through the resources to locate a few inventors/inventions of interest. Read about at least three.
2. Choose one to reread.
3. Fill out the bibliographic information.
4. Make notes.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' completion of the bibliographic information, accurate recording of reference and page numbers, and use of note types.

CLOSURE

Think-pair-share the most surprising information read. Ask for volunteers to share about these inventors and their inventors.

DAY 2**PRESENTATION**

Educators model composing a problem-and-solution summary paragraph. (The 7.3 Sample Problem-and-Solution Summary Paragraph is a sample for inventor Chester Greenwood.) First project the 7.3 Teacher Resource: Bibliography and Notemaking Graphic Organizer and circle the problem and solution (main ideas). Next compose a summary paragraph. Use the 7.3 Problem-and-Solution Summary Paragraph Rubric to guide the composition. Note the use of signal words such as "problem," "solution," or "solve." Educators model peer review and, along with students, assess the paragraph. Tell students each one will submit an individual final copy of the summary paragraph.

Students follow the writing process: compose with a partner; conference with a teacher or peer; revise, write, or keyboard an individual final copy; and self-assess individual paragraphs.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Circle the problem and solution (main ideas).
2. Review the rubric.

3. Compose a rough draft with a partner.
4. Conference with a peer or teacher.
5. Revise and edit the paragraph.
6. Make an individual final copy.
7. Self-assess using the rubric.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' writing process and peer conferences and conduct writing conferences with students.

CLOSURE

Form groups of four or five students who studied different inventors. Students read their paragraphs to their peers and share an illustration from the book they used for their research.

REFLECTION

What did you learn about kid inventors and their inventions? How did we determine the main ideas in the problem-and-solution text structure? What makes a detail relevant?

EXTENSIONS

Change the purpose for reading. This time ask students to read and skim more widely and make notes only on all of the different kinds of materials kid inventors used to create their inventions.

Collect kid problems or needs by asking for submissions from other classrooms in the building or in the greater cyber-community. Form groups, gather everyday materials, and create inventions to solve a selection of these problems. Write summaries of each invention, using *Imaginative Inventions* (rhyming poems) or *The Inventor's Times: Real-Life Stories of 30 Amazing Creations* (newspaper articles) as models. To format their articles, students can use the Newspaper Clipping Generator at <http://fodey.com>.

Create a web-based presentation of photographs of the students' inventions and their summaries to share with the students who suggested the problems and with families (see the example at http://story-trail.com/Impact/Chapter_7/advanced_envelope_licker.htm). Set up an invention museum in the library. Display the students' summaries alongside their inventions. Solicit feedback from school, community, or global audiences.

Reading Comprehension Strategy Six

Using Fix-up Options

*'Twas brillig, and the slithy toves
Did gyre and gimble in the wabe;
All mimsy were the borogoves,
And the mome raths outgrabe.*

—From “Jabberwocky,” in *Through the Looking Glass and What Alice Found There*, by Lewis Carroll

COLLABORATIVE TEACHING IN THE AGE OF ACCOUNTABILITY

MAXIMIZING YOUR IMPACT

- » **Strategy One: Activating or Building Background Knowledge**
- » **Strategy Two: Using Sensory Images**
- » **Strategy Three: Questioning**
- » **Strategy Four: Making Predictions and Inferences**
- » **Strategy Five: Determining Main Ideas**
- » **Strategy Six: Using Fix-up Options**
- » Strategy Seven: *Synthesizing*

How does a reader know when she has lost comprehension? Monitoring her own meaning-making and getting back on track when she has lost her way may be the most difficult task for any novice reader. The fix-up strategy offers readers processes they can use to recover meaning, such as rereading, reading ahead, or figuring out unknown words. The tricky part is knowing when to use these options.

The first five reading comprehension strategies presented in this book—connecting background knowledge, using sensory images, asking questions, predicting and inferring, and determining main ideas—can be used both in the recognition of a loss of comprehension and in the effort to recover it. When the reader is no longer making connections as she reads, she should begin to suspect that she has lost the thread of meaning. Texts quickly become boring when the reader fails to make text-to-self, text-to-text, or text-to-world connections. Without bringing her background knowledge and prior experience to bear, the distance between the author, the text, and the reader grows and can become a gap too wide to cross. A reader who strives to make meaning notices when the communication offered by connections is interrupted; the voice in her head becomes silent.

And what happens when the movie in her head pauses or the screen goes blank? The reader who can no longer visualize the story or information presented in the text has lost comprehension. With her senses turned off, the reader’s imagination can no longer access the meaning

behind the print on the page. Reading that does not engage the imagination does not touch the mind or the heart, and the lived-through experience or information is not stored in memory. The significance of the text is nowhere to be found.

Questioning, predicting, and inferring are activities that express curiosity. When the reader is not questioning the author or the text, when she is not seeking to ask and answer her own questions, she most certainly has lost interest and may have lost comprehension as well. Readers who predict what will come next are actively following a trail that leads them to information that may confirm or disprove their educated guesses. If the reader's interest wanes and she is no longer interested in reading on to find out more, chances are she is no longer finding significance in the reading. Making inferences also shows a commitment to teasing out the meaning in the text. When the thrill is gone, comprehension is often a victim.

Losing the ability to determine what is most important may also be a signal that comprehension is lost.

When the reader cannot distinguish between main ideas and supporting details, it can indicate a state of being overwhelmed by the text. Without the ability to use her schemas for the narrative framework or for text structures in order to put the information presented into a hierarchy of importance, the reader can be quickly buried in meaninglessness. Not knowing what to pay attention to as she reads, the reader may become frustrated and quickly tune out.

What is a reader to do when it becomes apparent that she has lost comprehension? Why, use fix-up options, of course! Educators must teach readers to recognize the symptoms of lost comprehension and then provide them with tools for fixing up their meaning-making. In the figure 8-1 excerpt from Lewis Carroll's nonsense poem, the reader uses several fix-up options to recover comprehension. The complete poem and process are found in the advanced fix-up strategy lesson in this chapter.

Like the elephant that uses its trunk to manipulate its environment, readers can employ fix-up options to

Fig. 8-1 Sample Fix-Up Options

Text: "Jabberwocky," from *Through the Looking Glass and What Alice Found There*, by Lewis Carroll

Fix-up Options

Read the entire poem

<p>Twas brillig, and the slithy toves.</p>	<p><i>Connect to background knowledge (text-to-text):</i> "Twas" means "it was," as in the poem "Twas the night before Christmas." <i>Make an inference:</i> "Brillig" sounds like the word "brilliant." Perhaps the events in the poem take place in the daytime. <i>Look at sentence structure (BK):</i> "Slithy" is probably an adjective that describes the toves. <i>Make a prediction:</i> The toves are animals.</p>
<p>Did gyre and gimble in the wabe;</p>	<p><i>Look at sentence structure (BK):</i> "Gyre" and "gimble" are verbs. <i>Make an inference:</i> The wabe is the place where the toves live. Read ahead to the end of this verse.</p>
<p>All mimsy were the borogoves, And the mome raths outgrabe.</p>	<p><i>Make inferences:</i> Borogoves and raths are also creatures that live in the wabe. "Mimsy" sounds like "whimsy," which suggests a pleasant, peaceful scene. <i>Visualization:</i> Imagine strange animals. <i>Ask a new question:</i> Are they living peacefully in a forest?</p>

retrace their steps, to find where they lost their way, and to get back on the path of meaning-making once more. Fix-up options are tools that readers can rely on to find their way home, to make sense of what they read. Learning to self-monitor for comprehension and then to use fix-up options when comprehension is lost gives readers responsibility for their own process, ownership that is critical for the success of their lifelong, independent reading. The fix-up strategy empowers readers to succeed.

HOW TO TEACH THE STRATEGY

Think-alouds in which educators and more proficient readers model both their loss and their recovery of comprehension are essential in helping less-proficient readers grasp the two-part process. Proficient readers must first model how to monitor comprehension and notice when it is lost, and then how to choose and use fix-up options to regain it. The questions in figure 8-2 can be posted in the classroom and the library to remind students of the symptomatic warning signs that they are not effectively using the active reading strategies they have learned.

Students can develop their own metaphors for lost comprehension. Some readers may think of comprehension in terms of the “voice” inside their heads—is it lost or confused? Others may think in terms of a “video” showing the action on a screen inside their minds. Has the projector shut off? Others may think about staying on a path and notice if they wander off the trail. It is important to involve students in determining their own signals, because they alone can recognize the moment they lose the thread of a story or the core of an informational text.

As this strategy lesson suggests, monitoring comprehension must be continuous throughout the reading. Readers who wait until they reach the end of the text before they realize they have no idea what it means have wasted time and effort by continuing long past their loss of comprehension. There is no simple way for readers to master self-monitoring. Modeling by educators or more proficient peers is a place to

begin, but readers surely need a great deal of practice with a wide range of texts that present a variety of comprehension challenges. The three sample lessons in this chapter include specific support for modeling and monitoring meaning-making.

Loss of comprehension can develop at the word, sentence, paragraph, chapter, or whole-text level. It seems natural for beginning readers to start investigating this phenomenon at the word level. When school librarians work with classroom teachers to help students develop strategies for defining unknown words, they build continuity between classroom and library.

When attempting to read an unknown word, students learn to skip the word and read to the end of the sentence. They can then guess at the meaning or replace the unknown word with one that makes sense. They should then reread both the sentence before the one with the unknown word and the sentence in question with the substituted word to determine if it makes sense. Readers are encouraged to use context clues—the words around the unknown word and the images in illustrated texts—to figure out meaning. They can also look for parts of the unknown word with which they may already be familiar, such as *under* in *underneath*.

Fig. 8-2 Am I Still Actively Reading? Questions to Monitor Comprehension

- Am I making connections?
- Am I visualizing and using all my senses as I read?
- Am I asking questions?
- Am I making predictions and inferring as I read?
- Am I determining main ideas?
- Can I summarize what I'm reading?

If you cannot answer yes to these questions, then you may have lost comprehension.

What can you do?

Slow down, use fix-up options, and get your comprehension back on track!

After pursuing these primary strategies, readers can choose to consult secondary resources. They can begin with text features such as the glossary or index. If these features are not available, they can consult a dictionary, thesaurus, or encyclopedia. They can also ask a peer. Educators should balance providing students with answers to their word-level questions with prompting them to discover the word's meaning on their own through one or more of these options. It is important to remember that, in teaching all reading comprehension strategies, the reader's independence is the ultimate goal.

At the sentence, paragraph, chapter, and whole-text levels, students can use the sixteen fix-up options recommended by Zimmermann and Hutchins (2003, 163) and adapted in figure 8-3. The fix-up options are sequenced according to relative difficulty of application.

Offering a complete tool kit, these sixteen fix-up options present learners with a review of the reading comprehension strategies addressed in this book. Students at all developmental levels can be encouraged to use as many options as possible. Educators must explain and model the use of each option and of multiple options during the how-to strategy lessons. Readers should be clear that one option alone, such as rereading, may not be sufficient to recover meaning. Keeping a tally sheet and citing examples can help readers and educators notice which options readers are using.

For the fix-up options lesson plans, I divide the sixteen options into three sets. The first set of eight is most appropriate for readers engaged with the emerging lesson. Those eight plus four more are used in the advancing lesson for a total of twelve options. For the advanced lesson readers use all sixteen options. Access the web extra bookmarks in both black-and-white and color for each of the three sets of options.

These are the fix-up options in the order in which they are presented on the bookmarks. Rereading and reading ahead are the most easily modeled and practiced fix-up options. Stopping to think is likewise easy to model, but students must be clear about what prompted the adult reader to reread, read ahead, or pause the reading in the first place. In think-alouds,

educators should provide students with a broad range of possibilities, such as an unknown word or phrase or a difficult or new concept, a new character, a change in the speaker or in the point of view, or an inability to summarize what has been read. Visualizing, posing questions, and predicting are options that make direct connections to the reading comprehension strategies discussed in chapters 4, 5, and 6, respectively. Using an illustration (such as a chart) or a text feature (such as a bold glossary word) are options that readers should connect with the strategy of determining main ideas (chapter 7).

Asking someone for help is last, but not least, in the first set of fix-up options. When educators model getting help from someone, they should clearly articulate the kind of help they need. "I don't get it" is not enough. Readers must learn to be more specific about their loss of comprehension and the kind of help they seek. For example, a reader can ask for help understanding why a character acted in a particular way or how a graph illustrates the idea found in the print. Using precise language is an important part of modeling asking fix-up questions of peers and adults.

Four more options follow this initial set. Figuring out unknown words should be demonstrated using context clues first, as noted above. Sentence structure, or syntax, provides readers with important context clues about the part of speech of the unknown word. These options can be modeled, practiced, and reinforced with *cloze procedures*, in which educators think aloud and students fill in the blanks. Students hypothesize the part of speech required and use the context clues to suggest missing words (see this book's glossary for an example). Figuring out unknown words by reading between the lines is one type of inference. Students can make inferences about all story elements as well as root causes or resulting effects of information presented in expository texts (chapter 6). To make effective inferences, students must successfully use their background knowledge, which is the next option. The self-recognition that they do not have enough background knowledge is of course necessary before they can remedy it (chapter 3).

Fig. 8-3 Fix-up Options Self-Monitoring Sheet

Options	Options Used	Example(s)
1. Reread.		
2. Read ahead.		
3. Stop to think.		
4. Try to visualize.		
5. Ask a new question.		
6. Make a prediction.		
7. Study the illustration or other text features.		
8. Ask someone for help.		
9. Figure out unknown words.		
10. Look at the sentence structure.		
11. Make an inference.		
12. Connect to background knowledge.		
13. Read the author's or illustrator's note.		
14. Write about the confusing parts.		
15. Make an effort to think about the message.		
16. Define/redefine the purpose for reading this text.		

Adapted from Zimmermann and Hutchins (2003).

The final four options require a good deal of sophistication on the part of the reader. Authors and illustrators give readers insight into themes and meanings of texts from the creators' perspective when they explain their motivation for writing or connections to the story or topic. Some children may have difficulty comprehending authors' notes, which are sometimes written for adult readers. Writing has been called "thinking on paper." When readers make the time to write about their confusion, they may be able to identify the source of their problem, or they may be

able to work through their misunderstanding. Making a conscious effort to think about the message, moral, or theme of the text is a high-level inference (chapter 6). Combining conscious thinking and writing about confusion can be most effective. Students need to be prompted to use writing about their confusion as a fix-up option.

Redefining the purpose for reading in order to make sense of a text is an advanced option for educators to model and for which students can reach. As students learned when studying main ideas, the

purpose for reading determines the reader's focus. The care with which readers pay attention to comprehension has a great deal to do with their purpose for reading and their commitment to meaning-making. With a low investment in the text, readers may decide to read on after comprehension is lost if they believe they can piece together what they missed or if what they are reading has little importance to their purpose for reading or relevance to their lives. If, on the other hand, the readers' main goal is to make meaning throughout the reading, then they will most likely slow down, retrace their steps, and apply one or more fix-up options to regain comprehension.

MAKING LITERATURE CONNECTIONS

Texts that support monitoring comprehension and using fix-up options have one thing in common: they are confusing to the reader. Identifying texts to teach this strategy requires educators to be sensitive to the unique background experiences and reading development of the students in their charge. A text built around an unfamiliar text structure, such as cause and effect or problem and solution, can also be bewildering to readers. A text in content areas with new or specialized vocabulary or concepts can confound them. Texts that use idiomatic expressions and jargon can be confusing to students who are not insiders to a particular culture, who are new to a particular region, or who are learning a second language. Science fiction texts that require readers to keep an alternate reality with all of its imagined characteristics clearly in their minds can be mystifying. Poetic texts that use metaphors and other literary devices can pose challenges to students who lack the background or experience to make the necessary comparisons between literal and figurative meanings. When educators are selecting mentor texts for teaching fix-up options, they can look to every genre.

Ultimately, any and every text has the potential to leave readers perplexed. It is up to the readers themselves to recognize their loss of comprehension during the reading process. In addition to using children's materials, educators must model both the loss of comprehension and the use of fix-up strategies to regain

it with texts written for adults. This helps students realize that using the fix-up strategy is a lifelong learning skill. The importance of recognizing the need for self-monitoring meaning-making is a prerequisite for teaching the fix-up options. Monitoring comprehension and using fix-up options are two sides of the same coin.

CHILDREN'S LITERATURE CITED

Starred titles are used in the lesson plans.

*"Jabberwocky," in *Through the Looking Glass and What Alice Found There*, by Lewis Carroll (any illustrated version)

**Rosa*, by Nikki Giovanni, illustrated by Bryan Collier

**Voices in the Park*, by Anthony Browne

LESSON PLANS

All three lesson plans include mentor books with formats, topics, concepts, or vocabulary that may be unfamiliar to students at each level of literacy development. Each lesson includes a teacher resource supplement that offers examples of ways to introduce readers to the fix-up options. These supplements may include more examples than educators would normally integrate into one lesson. Educators are encouraged to choose the options that seem most appropriate for their students. Ideally, educators will introduce and reinforce these strategies at teachable moments, when the need for a fix-up occurs spontaneously during a text reading.

In each of the lessons, educators ask students to brainstorm how they know when they have lost comprehension, when they no longer understand what they are reading or hearing. Record and save students' ideas. Use their ideas to create a class and library chart similar to figure 8-2. Remember that the fix-up options are useful only if readers are conscious of their loss of comprehension. In fact, monitoring the loss of comprehension, rather than the fix-up options themselves, may be the most important component of these lessons.

LESSON PLAN 8.1

Reading Comprehension Strategy Six

Using Fix-up Options

Reading Development Level: Emerging

Instructional Strategies

Cues and Questions, Classifying, and Summarizing

Lesson Length

1 session

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to monitor comprehension and to use fix-up options to regain comprehension of a sophisticated picture book.

Objectives

At the end of this lesson, after reading *Voices in the Park*, students will be able to

1. Define eight fix-up options.
2. Determine when they have lost comprehension.
3. Use fix-up options to regain comprehension.
4. Evaluate which options were most useful with this particular text.
5. Participate in a shared-writing reflective paragraph about the experience of using the fix-up strategy.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Voices in the Park, by Anthony Browne

Graphic organizers: 8.1 Teacher Resource: Fix-up Options, 8.1 Fix-up Options Monitoring Tally Sheet

8.1 Sample Shared-Writing Paragraphs

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators divide the class in half. Each uses think-alouds to model recognizing a loss of comprehension and using fix-up options to recover comprehension. Each educator facilitates a shared writing, a reflective paragraph about using fix-up options.

Assessment

The students' participation (class tally sheet and shared writing) shows what they understand about recognizing a loss of comprehension and using fix-up options.

Standards

Reading keywords: monitor reading; predict using prior knowledge; confirm predictions; relate information to life experiences; interpret text

Writing keywords: generate ideas through prewriting; participate in a group response to a literary selection; use the writing process

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Monitor gathered information and assess for gaps and weaknesses. (1.4.3)
- Respond to literature and creative expressions of ideas in various formats and genres. (4.1.3)

PROCESS

MOTIVATION

Divide the class in half. Each educator works with half the class. Booktalk *Voices in the Park*, the mentor text for this lesson.

Cues and Questions: Students think about a time they visited a park. Ask: “Who were you with? What did you do? If the other child or adult with you were to tell the story of that day in the park, would her story be the same as yours?” Educators model asking and answering these questions. Then they ask the questions one at a time and involve students in a think-pair-share with a partner.

Book walk *Voices in the Park*. Show that the book is divided into four voices. Ask: “Have you read books that are constructed like this one?” Discuss how this type of construction may be confusing for a reader. Ask: “What can you do when the words and ideas you are reading are not making sense?”

To make meaning when we read, we need to understand what we are reading. Ask: “How do you know when a text stops making sense?” Ask students to brainstorm how they know when they have lost comprehension, when they no longer understand what they are reading or hearing. Record and save students’ ideas. (Supplement brainstorm with ideas from figure 8-2 or some of these examples: “voice” in head is lost or confused; “projector” inside head shuts off; mind starts to wander; can’t remember what was just read; characters suddenly appear or the reader has no memory of them; lost track of what’s happening; bored!)

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Notice when the book doesn’t make sense.
2. Use eight fix-up options.
3. Count fix-up options used.
4. Decide which option helped most and which helped least.
5. Contribute to a shared-writing response to the book.

PRESENTATION

Students sit with partners. Project the 8.1 Fix-up Options Monitoring Tally Sheet. Post this sign: READ, STOP AND THINK, TALK ALOUD, USE A FIX-UP STRATEGY, MARK TALLY SHEET, READ ON

An educator reads *Voices in the Park* and marks the class tally sheet. She uses think-aloud strategies to share a possible loss of comprehension and use of fix-up options (see the 8.1 Teacher Resource: Fix-up

Options). After modeling with a few pages, stop periodically to conduct think-pair-share procedures. Invite students to suggest when there is a loss of comprehension and to recommend a fix-up option.

Students raise hands to stop the reading. The educator probes the students' confusion or suggests one of her own. (Stop after reading each double-page spread.) Continue to use think-alouds to determine the fix-up option to use to get unstuck. The educator marks and makes notes on the class tally sheet.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Raise hand when confused.
2. Explain your confusion.
3. Think-pair-share loss of comprehension.
4. Use one or more of the fix-up options.
5. Raise hand to share with the class.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor the students' contributions and cooperative learning.

CLOSURE

Each half-class group tallies the fix-up options and notes which options were used most often and which were used least frequently. Think-pair-share a response to the story. Think-pair-share ideas about using fix-up options to make meaning.

Compose one shared-writing response to the story and one shared-writing reflection about using fix-up options to make meaning (see the 8.1 Sample Shared-Writing Paragraphs). Bring the groups back together as one whole class to share the writing pieces and conduct the reflection.

REFLECTION

When a book is difficult to understand, should we simply give up? What are some of the options we learned to help us understand challenging text? How do we know when to use fix-up options? How can we remember what the options are? If we are not making meaning, are we reading?

EXTENSION

To extend this lesson, repeat this process with other challenging texts, including poems, short stories, and informational texts. Continue to monitor which options are used most frequently and which new options are being added to the students' repertoires.

LESSON PLAN 8.2

Reading Comprehension Strategy Six

Using Fix-up Options

Reading Development Level: Advancing

Instructional Strategies

Cues and Questions, Classifying, Metaphors, and Summarizing

Lesson Length

2 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to monitor comprehension and to use fix-up options to regain comprehension of an informational book.

Objectives

At the end of this lesson after reading *Rosa*, students will be able to

1. Define twelve fix-up options.
2. Determine when they have lost comprehension.
3. Use fix-up options to regain comprehension.
4. Evaluate which options were most useful with this particular text.
5. Define and use metaphors.
6. Compose a reflective paragraph about their experience using the fix-up strategy.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Rosa, by Nikki Giovanni, illustrated by Bryan Collier

Graphic organizers: 8.2 Teacher Resource: Fix-up Options, 8.2 Fix-up Options Self-Monitoring Tally Sheet, 8.2 Reflective Paragraph Rubric

8.2 Sample Reflective Paragraph

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators work as a team to model recognizing a loss of comprehension and using fix-up options to recover comprehension. They collaborate to model partner writing and reflective paragraph assessment.

Assessment

Students' self-monitoring sheets, reflective paragraphs, and rubric assessments show what they understand about recognizing a loss of comprehension and using fix-up options.

Standards

Reading keywords: monitor reading; predict using prior knowledge; confirm predictions; ask clarifying questions; use knowledge of word order (syntax); use graphic organizers; make connections to other texts or background knowledge; interpret text

Writing keywords: summary or reflective paper that describes, explains, informs, or summarizes ideas and content; supports a thesis based on experience; prewriting; paragraph includes topic sentence, supporting details, and relevant information; use the writing process

Social studies keywords: individuals (e.g., Rosa Parks, Dr. Martin Luther King Jr.) worked for and supported the rights and freedoms of others; identify traits of character (e.g., honesty, courage, cooperation, respect, trustworthiness, responsibility, citizenship) that are important to the preservation and improvement of democracy

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Monitor gathered information and assess for gaps and weaknesses. (1.4.3)
- Assess the quality and effectiveness of the learning product. (3.4.2)
- Respond to literature and creative expressions of ideas in various formats and genres. (4.1.3)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Cues and Questions: *Rosa*, the mentor book for this lesson, has earned many awards, both for the words (print) and for the illustrations. Many people believe this book is well written and beautifully illustrated. It also includes some words and concepts that may be difficult for students to understand. Ask: “What can you do when the words and ideas on the page or on the screen don’t make sense?”

To make meaning when we read, we need to understand what we are reading. Ask: “How do you know when a text stops making sense?” Students brainstorm how they know when they have lost comprehension, when they no longer understand what they are reading or hearing. Record and save students’ ideas. (Supplement brainstorm with ideas from figure 8-2.)

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Identify signs of lost comprehension.
2. Define and apply the twelve fix-up options.
3. Identify which fix-up options help most and least in comprehending this text.

PRESENTATION

Students sit with partners. Each team has a copy of the 8.2 Fix-up Options Self-Monitoring Tally Sheet. Project a copy of the tally sheet. Post this sign: READ, STOP AND THINK, TALK ALOUD, USE A FIX-UP STRATEGY, MARK YOUR ORGANIZER, READ ON

One educator reads *Rosa*. The other educator takes responsibility for marking the class tally sheet. Both use think-alouds to share their loss of comprehension and use of fix-up options (see the 8.2 Teacher Resource: Fix-up Options). After modeling with a few pages, stop periodically to conduct think-pair-share procedures. Invite students to suggest when there is a loss of comprehension and to recommend a fix-up option. Mark the tally sheet and note examples.

The students work with a partner. They raise their hands if they lose meaning. (Educators fill in where students do not respond to a loss of comprehension.) Probe students regarding their loss of comprehension. Educators facilitate the think-pair-share. Students offer fix-up strategy options to regain meaning.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Raise hand when confused.
2. Explain your confusion.
3. Think-pair-share your loss of comprehension.
4. Use one or more of the fix-up options.
5. Raise hand to share with the class.
6. Place a tally mark and note the example on the graphic organizer.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators probe students to ascertain the source of their confusion. They clarify the students' fix-up option contributions.

CLOSURE

As a class, tally the fix-up options marks. Note which options were used most often and which were used least frequently. Discuss examples.

DAY 2

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Brainstorm metaphors for fix-up strategies.
2. Write a paragraph with a partner about losing comprehension and using fix-up options.
3. Include a metaphor in the paragraph.

PRESENTATION

Define similes as comparisons between different things or ideas that use *like* or *as* and metaphors as comparisons that do not use *like* or *as*. Give some examples such as those found in figure 4-1. As a class, brainstorm some similes and metaphors for the concept of the fix-up strategy and using fix-up options, which the educators then record on the whiteboard. (Examples: tools from a reader's toolbox; needle and thread to stitch comprehension back together; a magnifying glass that helps readers focus and see where they went wrong; friends that help you when you get lost.) Let students know that they will be using a simile or metaphor in their reflective paragraphs.

Using the class tally sheet as a writing prompt, educators model the student practice procedures and compose a reflective paragraph to summarize what they learned about losing comprehension and using fix-up options (see the 8.2 Sample Reflective Paragraph). Use the 8.2 Reflective Paragraph Rubric to assess the sample paragraph.

Students work with a partner to complete the tasks. Each student writes his/her own final copy of the reflective paragraph.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Review the class comprehension loss brainstorm.
2. Review your tally sheet and examples.
3. Web three big ideas about losing comprehension.
4. Web three big ideas about applying fix-up options.
5. Compose a paragraph with your partner.
6. Check the rubric, revise, and edit.
7. Each person writes a final copy.
8. Self-assess as a team using the rubric.
9. Turn in web, draft, final copy, and rubric.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' writing process and conduct writing conferences when appropriate.

CLOSURE

Discuss the reflection questions. Pose the final reflection question and ask students to think-pair-share. Invite volunteers to share their ideas with the class.

REFLECTION

When a book is difficult to understand, should we simply give up? What are some of the options we learned to help us understand challenging texts? How do we know when to use fix-up options? How can we remember what the options are? If we are not making meaning, are we reading?

EXTENSIONS

Rosa is also a mentor text in the advancing synthesizing lesson in chapter 9. If educators do not facilitate that mini-unit, reread *Rosa* and make notes on the information in the text. Ask students to design a product to show what they learned or the questions they still have about Mrs. Rosa Parks (see ideas from the advancing lesson in chapter 9).

To extend this lesson, repeat this process with other challenging texts, including poems, short stories, and other kinds of informational text. Continue to monitor which options are used most frequently and which new options are being added to the students' repertoires.

LESSON PLAN 8.3

Reading Comprehension Strategy Six

Using Fix-up Options

Reading Development Level: Advanced

Instructional Strategies

Cues and Questions, Classifying, Metaphors, and Summarizing

Lesson Length

2 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this lesson is to monitor comprehension and to use fix-up options to regain comprehension of a nonsense poem.

Objectives

At the end of this lesson, after reading and analyzing “Jabberwocky,” students will be able to

1. Define all sixteen fix-up options.
2. Determine when they have lost comprehension.
3. Practice metacognition to apply their preferred options.
4. Evaluate which options were most useful with this particular text.
5. Define and use metaphors.
6. Compose a reflective paragraph about their experience using the fix-up strategy.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

“Jabberwocky,” by Lewis Carroll, illustrated by Joel Stewart, or another illustrated edition of the poem

“Jabberwocky,” from *Through the Looking Glass and What Alice Found There*, by Lewis Carroll

Graphic organizers: 8.3 Teacher Resource: Fix-up Options, 8.3 Poem Graphic Organizer, 8.3 Fix-up

Options Self-Monitoring Tally Sheet, 8.3 Reflective Paragraph Rubric

8.3 Sample Reflective Paragraph

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators work as a team to model recognizing a loss of comprehension and using fix-up options to recover comprehension. Both monitor student partners as they practice this strategy. They collaborate to model partner writing and reflective paragraph assessment.

Assessment

Students' self-monitoring sheet, reflective paragraph, and rubric assessment show what they understand about recognizing a loss of comprehension and using fix-up options.

Standards

Reading keywords: monitor reading; predict using prior knowledge; confirm predictions; ask clarifying questions; use graphic organizers; make connections to other texts or background knowledge; interpret text

Writing keywords: summary or reflective paper that describes, explains, informs, or summarizes ideas and content; supports a thesis based on experience; prewriting; record observations on charts; paragraph includes topic sentence, supporting details, and relevant information; use the writing process

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Monitor gathered information and assess for gaps and weaknesses. (1.4.3)
- Assess the quality and effectiveness of the learning product. (3.4.2)
- Respond to literature and creative expressions of ideas in various formats and genres. (4.1.3)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Cues and Questions: Share a nonsense song, a song in a language students do not speak, or some other incomprehensible text. Ask: "What clues would you use to make sense of this?"

Have you ever read the poem "Jabberwocky" by Lewis Carroll? Cover the book jacket so students cannot see the cover illustration. Read an illustrated version but do not share the illustrations. Let students know this is intentional and designed to force them to make sense from the print alone. Ask: "Does this poem make sense to you? Why or why not? What can you do when the words and ideas you are reading don't make sense?"

To make meaning when we read, we need to understand what we are reading. Ask: "How do you know when a text stops making sense?" Students brainstorm how they know when they have lost comprehension, when they no longer understand what they are reading or hearing. Record and save students' ideas. (Supplement brainstorm with ideas from figure 8-2.)

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Identify signs of lost comprehension.
2. Define and use the sixteen fix-up options.
3. Identify which fix-up options help most and least in comprehending this poem.

PRESENTATION

Students sit with partners. Each team has a copy of the 8.3 Poem Graphic Organizer and the 8.3 Fix-up Options Self-Monitoring Tally Sheet. Post this sign: READ, STOP AND THINK, TALK ALOUD, USE A FIX-UP STRATEGY, MARK YOUR ORGANIZER, READ ON

Project the poem graphic organizer. Reread the entire poem and then reread the first verse. To make sense of this nonsense poem, educators model pausing the reading, thinking aloud, using fix-up options to regain comprehension, making a note about it, marking the tally sheet to indicate which strategy they used, and noting an example (see the 8.3 Teacher Resource: Fix-up Options). If necessary, review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Through this process, review as many of the sixteen fix-up options as possible and clarify their meaning by giving examples from the first verse. Notice which options were not used and explain those.

Tell students to continue reading with their partners and to apply the process just modeled. Remind students that even partners' graphic organizers can be different. Readers often use different options for the same reading challenges.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Read aloud.
2. Stop at the end of each line.
3. Think aloud with your partner.
4. Use one or more of the fix-up options.
5. Make notes about how you used the option on the poem graphic organizer.
6. Place a tally mark on the tally sheet and note your example.
7. Read on.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor the groups' process and progress. Conference with groups about the tricky parts.

CLOSURE

Did all of us use the same options? Ask students to tally their marks. Note which options were used most often and which were used least frequently. Reread "Jabberwocky" as illustrated by Joel Stewart and share the illustrations. Ask students if these were the images they visualized.

DAY 2**STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES**

1. Web ideas about losing comprehension.
2. Web ideas about using fix-up strategies.
3. Write a reflective paragraph with a partner about fix-up options.
4. Include a metaphor or simile in the paragraph.
5. Turn in partner web and draft and individual final paragraphs and rubrics.

PRESENTATION

Define similes as comparisons between different things or ideas that use *like* or *as* and metaphors as comparisons that do not use *like* or *as*. Give some examples such as those found in figure 4-1. As a class, brainstorm some similes and metaphors for fix-up strategies, which the educators record on the white-

board. (Examples: swords that slay the confusion dragon; tools from a reader's toolbox; needle and thread to stitch comprehension back together; a magnifying glass that helps readers focus and see where they went wrong; friends that help you when you get lost.) Let students know that they will be using a simile or metaphor in their reflective paragraphs.

Using a fictitious tally sheet as a writing prompt, educators web their ideas and then model composing a reflective paragraph to show what they learned about losing comprehension and using fix-up options (see the 8.3 Sample Reflective Paragraph). Include a simile or metaphor. Use the 8.3 Reflective Paragraph Rubric to assess the sample paragraph.

Students work with a partner to organize their prewriting and draft their paragraphs. They write individual final copies and complete individual self-assessments using the rubric.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Review the class comprehension loss brainstorm.
2. Review your tally sheet.
3. Web three big ideas about losing comprehension.
4. Web three big ideas about applying fix-up options.
5. Compose a paragraph with your partner and include a simile or metaphor.
6. Check the rubric, revise, and edit.
7. Write an individual final copy.
8. Self-assess final copy using the rubric.
9. Turn in partner webs and draft and individual final copy and rubric.

CLOSURE

Ask students to share their similes and metaphors for fix-up strategies. Discuss the reflection questions. Pose the final reflection question and ask students to think-pair-share. Invite volunteers to share their thoughts with the class.

REFLECTION

How do we recognize when we have lost comprehension? What are some options we can use to recover our comprehension? Why is it important to make meaning from what we read? If we are not making meaning, are we reading?

EXTENSIONS

Create a cloze procedure by deleting the unknown words in "Jabberwocky." Give students the opportunity to make up their own poem using real or nonsense words and then to illustrate it. Share the poems and illustrations and create an electronic or printed class book.

Collect a text set of illustrated versions of "Jabberwocky." Ask students to compare their own visual imagery with that of published illustrators of this poem.

To reteach the fix-up strategy lesson, repeat this process with other texts, including other poems, short stories, informational texts, and textbooks. Continue to assess which options are used most frequently and which new options are being added to the students' repertoires.

Reading Comprehension Strategy Seven

Synthesizing

The Mouse Moral: Knowing in part may make a fine tale, but wisdom comes from seeing the whole.

—From *Seven Blind Mice*, by Ed Young

COLLABORATIVE TEACHING IN THE AGE OF ACCOUNTABILITY

MAXIMIZING YOUR IMPACT

- » **Strategy One: Activating or Building Background Knowledge**
- » **Strategy Two: Using Sensory Images**
- » **Strategy Three: Questioning**
- » **Strategy Four: Making Predictions and Inferences**
- » **Strategy Five: Determining Main Ideas**
- » **Strategy Six: Using Fix-up Options**
- » **Strategy Seven: Synthesizing**

Synthesizing is putting it all together; it is the whole elephant. Unlike a summary, which is just the facts and only the facts, synthesis goes a step farther. True, it is composed of the main ideas as selected by the reader, but through the selection process readers analyze the information they have gathered and filter it through their own interpretations. Synthesis sheds light on the significance of texts from the reader's point of view. Although it is possible to synthesize the information found in just one text, the more common practice of this strategy, particularly from a school library perspective, involves bringing together information from several sources. As readers synthesize, they sort and evaluate information. They may find agreement among texts, or they may encounter conflicting "facts." Synthesizing, like determining main ideas, requires that readers make value judgments.

Modeling and practicing this comprehension strategy are a natural activity for classroom-library collaboration. With a focus on information literacy, school librarians are perfectly positioned to serve as teacher leaders with expertise in teaching synthesizing strategies. Teaching students to access information efficiently and effectively, to evaluate information critically and competently, and to use information accurately and creatively are part and parcel of the school librarian's instructional role. If "synthesis is the process of ordering, recalling, retelling, and recreating [information] into a coherent whole" (Keene and Zimmermann 1997, 169), then surely the library with its rich

array of resources is the perfect location for modeling and practicing this strategy. In fact, it may be in libraries of all types that students will continue to put this lifelong learning skill into practice.

Synthesizing requires that readers use the strategies offered in this book to read, to evaluate, and to use ideas and information. Synthesis requires longer-term, in-depth learning. When students are exploring curriculum-based subjects or independent inquiry topics, the school librarian can offer expertise in teaching information literacy skills and strategies. The library collection, the Web, and interlibrary loan can supply the resources students and classroom teachers need to be successful. Keeping accurate bibliographic records and notemaking effectively, which are foundational information literacy skills, are even more critical when students are synthesizing information from multiple sources. Classroom teachers will appreciate school librarians who can codevelop print and electronic graphic organizers that help students maintain organization while gathering information.

With a library collection that is aligned with classroom curricula and the independent reading and research needs of the learning community, the school librarian can support resource-based units of instruction. This is a pivotal professional task for school librarians. Supplementing the collection through interlibrary loan is a way to ensure that classroom teachers and students are successful in their research and inquiry projects. Interlibrary loan can be particularly valuable when educators need multiple copies of texts.

Units of study that focus on synthesis invite increased opportunities for interdisciplinary teaching and learning. Including other educators in synthesis collaborations can enhance student outcomes. Students benefit when specialists such as art or music teachers participate in designing, implementing, and assessing lessons. These broader partnerships have the potential to influence the level of collaboration throughout the school community. Everyone can profit from the resulting culture of shared responsibility for student learning.

As with all collaborative teaching, increasing adult support can offer students more individual assistance.

Lowering the student-teacher ratio can also help students remain on task during extended learning periods, because they don't have to wait as long to receive help or redirection. Classroom-library collaboration to teach and practice synthesis is not just more effective, it's also more fun. With two or more educators to monitor student learning and adjust instruction, students may experience greater learning success and educators may find more enjoyment in teaching long-term projects.

For students to synthesize information effectively and make it their own, they must first bring it all together. They must develop all of the reading comprehension strategies discussed in this book and use them to make meaning. They must merge the information found in various resources, interpret it, and put it back together into a transformed and coherent whole. Readers who can synthesize are like the white mouse in their ability to consider the parts and to understand the whole elephant. Students who master this strategy are proficient at comprehending the texts they read, combining information from multiple sources, and passing that information through their own interpretations. It is through this process that learners generate knowledge that creates, develops, and revises their schemas. The persistent information overload of 21st-century life has made this skill more important than ever.

HOW TO TEACH THE STRATEGY

Synthesizing requires that readers determine main ideas from multiple sources, summarize information, and add their own interpretations. Graphic organizers, such as the 9.2 Informational Book Self-Monitoring Graphic Organizer (web extra and figure 9-1), can be developed to help readers record main ideas and surprising information as well as their connections, responses, and interpretations.

Bringing these strategies together helps readers see how comprehension strategies are related. The example in figure 9-1 includes a section to help readers be aware of the print and text features that present

Fig. 9-1 Informational Book Self-Monitoring Graphic Organizer

Student's Name: _____

Text Title: _____

Author/Illustrator: _____

1. I reread to better understand information about the following:

2. I made notes about the five Ws and the H:

Who?

What?

Where?

When?

Why?

How?

3. I found this new information the most interesting or surprising to me:

4. I learned that new information by reading

- a. the print
- b. the illustrations
- c. the captions
- d. a graphic such as a map, chart, graph, or photograph
- e. other (Name it.)

5. What connections am I making?

What do I think or feel about this information?

What does this information mean to me?

6. What are my new or unanswered questions?

new information. This list also serves as a reminder to use all the features in informational resources.

Synthesis, a higher-order thinking skill, is the process of learning from others' ideas and transforming those ideas through analysis and interpretation to offer a new meaning. Through synthesis, learners make information and ideas their own. Some examples of verbs associated with synthesizing are *construct*, *design*, *devise*, *formulate*, *imagine*, *invent*, and *propose*. Each of these actions suggests that learners go beyond the facts to suggest their own ideas, to offer their own interpretations.

A simple way to express the components of synthesizing that may be particularly appropriate to younger readers is

Information + Response = Synthesis

Readers' responses to texts can be described in many ways. They can make personal or text-to-self connections that include their prior knowledge, experiences, and feelings. They can respond to specific story elements, such as the setting or theme. They can pose questions about concepts or topics and suggest "what if" scenarios. The important thing about a response is that it not be a restatement of the story or facts. A response is unique to the reader and demonstrates the central role of the reader in the reading transaction. Combined with information or evidence from texts, readers' responses are the other main ingredient in synthesis.

When more advanced readers interpret texts, they explain meaning in relation to their own beliefs, judgments, or circumstances. To that end, another way for students to conceive of synthesis is

Information + Interpretation = Synthesis

Unit design is one way to ensure that students incorporate their own interpretations into their synthesis projects. Assignments must require that students do more than cut and paste information and call it a "report." Designing instruction so that students are required to think about the ideas and information

they read is fundamental. Involving students in asking authentic questions, analyzing information, and transforming it through synthesis means expecting them to do more than regurgitate facts. Loertscher, Koechlin, and Zwaan's *Ban Those Bird Units: 15 Models for Teaching and Learning in Information-Rich and Technology-Rich Environments* (2004) is an exemplary resource for guiding classroom-library collaboration to help students achieve synthesis.

Print and electronic information-seeking skills can be taught during instruction focused on synthesis. Resource location skills and using the text features of informational books are tasks that may be required for students engaged in learning this strategy. Teaching students to use the online card catalog efficiently and effectively can be integrated into units of instruction in which students select their own text sets and materials. Skimming, scanning, and notemaking are subskills in the research process and can be taught or reviewed during synthesis lessons. When a savvy school librarian shares expertise in searching web-based and database resources, classroom teachers as well as students can further develop their electronic literacy skills. Teaching students how to evaluate resources, particularly websites, for authority, accuracy, and currency is easily integrated into synthesis lessons. For students, practicing synthesis requires them to master a valuable set of subskills and strategies, many of which can be taught most effectively through classroom-library collaboration.

MAKING LITERATURE CONNECTIONS

When choosing texts for the purpose of synthesizing ideas and information, educators can provide students with carefully selected text sets of resources at various reading levels, in multiple genres, and in a variety of formats, including websites and other technology sources. Developing text sets collaboratively can be a valuable learning experience for educators, who may bring different strengths and perspectives to the table.

Ultimately, educators must give students the responsibility to develop their own text sets on a particular topic or theme. By collecting and evaluating resources, students can demonstrate what they have learned about the strengths of various genres in supporting research and inquiry projects. They can assess the works of favorite authors, illustrators, and web-based resources for their usefulness in achieving their learning objectives. After educators model collecting and using text sets, students are ready to assume responsibility for this aspect of the research process, and educators can then serve in an advisory role.

CHILDREN'S LITERATURE CITED

Starred titles are used in the lesson plans.

- **The Bus Ride That Changed History: The Story of Rosa Parks*, by Pamela Duncan Edwards, illustrated by Danny Shanahan
- **Camille and the Sunflowers: A Story about Vincent van Gogh*, by Laurence Anholt
- **Jazz Cats*, by David Davis, illustrated by Chuck Galey
- **The Other Side*, by Jacqueline Woodson, illustrated by E. B. Lewis
- **Remember: The Journey to School Integration*, by Toni Morrison, illustrated with photographs from the 1950s and 1960s
- **Rosa*, by Nikki Giovanni, illustrated by Bryan Collier
- **Rosa Parks*, by Michelle Levine
- **Side by Side: The Story of Dolores Huerta and César Chávez / Lado a lado: la historia de Dolores Huerta y César Chávez*, by Monica Brown, illustrated by Joe Cepeda, translated by Carolina Valencia
- **Sit-In: How Four Friends Stood Up by Sitting Down*, by Andrea Davis Pinkney, illustrated by Brian Pinkney

**This Is the Dream*, by Diane Z. Shore and Jessica Alexander, illustrated by James Ransome

**Van Gogh: The Touch of Yellow*, by Jacqueline Loumaye, illustrated by Claudine Roucha, translated by John Goodman

**Vincent's Colors*, by Vincent van Gogh

LESSON PLANS

These units of study for teaching synthesis are at three levels of literacy development. The language arts/visual arts unit for emerging readers extends students' experience to making notes from several sources, responding to all the texts, writing a synthesis, and creating a painting inspired by Vincent van Gogh. After immersing students in information about Rosa Parks and racial discrimination, the advancing social studies/language arts unit gives students an opportunity to develop an open-ended synthesis product. With lower student-teacher ratios, the benefit of more adult facilitation is particularly apparent. The advanced unit is the most interdisciplinary example offered in this book. It lends itself to a wider collaboration that includes art and music teachers as well as the classroom teacher and school librarian. At the end

of this unit, students synthesize their learning through expository and creative writing as well as by creating an illustration in Pablo Picasso's cubist style.

Each of the units in this chapter ends with an extension that involves the class authoring a shared-writing article to inform the learning community of their accomplishments. It is important for school librarians to make their collaborative work known to colleagues, families, and decision makers in the school and beyond. Involving students in summarizing classroom-library collaborations gives them the opportunity to practice their writing skills while supporting classroom teachers and advocating the teaching role of the school librarian and the importance of the library program in their learning.

To synthesize from multiple resources, students need time to explore and immerse themselves in a topic, to investigate various resources in many formats, and to reorganize information and combine it with their own interpretations. Through classroom-library collaboration, educators are able to help students sustain the motivation and interest required to complete a long-term project. These valuable opportunities to go deeper set the stage for more independent research and inquiry projects that will be core schooling and lifelong learning experiences for students.

LESSON PLAN 9.1

Reading Comprehension Strategy Seven

Synthesizing

Reading Development Level: Emerging

Instructional Strategies

Categorizing, Notemaking, and Summarizing

Lesson Length

3–5 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this unit is to synthesize information from three sources and to express learning through writing and visual art.

Objectives

At the end of this lesson, students will be able to

1. Categorize and make notes and record sources.
2. Synthesize the information from three sources.
3. Compose sentences and create artwork to show learning.
4. Self-assess with a rubric.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Camille and the Sunflowers: A Story about Vincent van Gogh, by Laurence Anholt

Van Gogh: The Touch of Yellow, by Jacqueline Loumaye, illustrated by Claudine Roucha, translated by John Goodman

Vincent's Colors, words and pictures by Vincent van Gogh

Graphic organizers: 9.1 Teacher Resource: Bibliography and Notemaking Graphic Organizer, 9.1

Bibliography and Notemaking Graphic Organizer, 9.1 Teacher Resource: Prewriting Category

Web, 9.1 Prewriting Category Web, 9.1 Synthesis Sentences and Painting Rubric

9.1 Sample Letter, 9.1 Sample Artwork and Writing, 9.1 Sample Summary and Synthesis

Materials: Poster, print, or online access to van Gogh's painting *Sunflowers*; globe and map of Europe; and sunflowers and a vase (optional)

Art materials: See 9.1 Artwork Directions.

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators team and individually teach notemaking. They model synthesizing information from three sources. They monitor students' artwork and writing and take dictation if needed. Collaboration with the art teacher may enrich this study.

Assessment

Students' bibliography and notemaking graphic organizers, sentences and artwork, and rubrics show the process and results of their learning.

Standards

Reading keywords: extract information and use graphic organizers to comprehend text; connect information and events in text to related text and sources

Writing keywords: use written language for a variety of purposes and audiences; functional writing (letters); paraphrase information from at least one source; write a simple report with a title and three facts

Visual arts keywords: use subjects in a work of art; use expressive qualities to create meaning in a finished work of art; compare the influences and experiences of the artist and viewer in relation to a particular piece of artwork

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Continue an inquiry-based research process by applying critical-thinking skills (analysis, synthesis, evaluation, organization) to information and knowledge in order to construct new understandings, draw conclusions, and create new knowledge. (2.1.1)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
- Use creative and artistic formats to express personal learning. (4.1.8)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Display or project *Sunflowers* by Vincent van Gogh. Ask: "Have you seen this painting before?" "Do you know the name of the painter who created it?" Educators model responses that include emotions and ideas the painting evokes. They should also model responses to the painting related to van Gogh's artistic style and painting technique. Students think-pair-share a response to the painting.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Identify painter van Gogh and his style.
2. Respond to the artwork and book.

3. Share ideas for group notes.
4. Give ideas for a shared writing.

PRESENTATION

One educator reads *Vincent's Colors* and the other records class notes. On a class-size 9.1 Bibliography and Notemaking Graphic Organizer, record the title/author/illustrator and read the first page of the book. Review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Model notemaking with information from page 1 (see the 9.1 Teacher Resource: Bibliography and Notemaking Graphic Organizer). Use the globe and a map of Europe to show the location of the Netherlands, Paris, and Arles in southern France.

Continue reading. The students suggest notes and categories. An educator records notes.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Think-pair-share with partner.
2. Suggest a note.
3. Tell which category it fits.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators encourage responses and monitor types of notes.

CLOSURE

Students think-pair-share their initial responses to van Gogh's paintings and words. Student volunteers share their thoughts with the class.

Review the bibliography and notemaking graphic organizer with a focus on the responses. Educators lead the students in composing a shared-writing letter to van Gogh that expresses their responses to his paintings and words (see the 9.1 Sample Letter).

DAYS 2 AND 3**PRESENTATION**

Divide the class in half. One educator reads *Camille and the Sunflowers*. The other shares the paintings and reads the captions in *Van Gogh: The Touch of Yellow*. Each group keeps a 9.1 Bibliography and Notemaking Graphic Organizer. Notes can be written by the educator, or if students are proficient writers they can make notes on their own graphic organizers.

Follow day 1 procedures.

CLOSURE

Review the notes and think-pair-share one new idea about van Gogh. For day 3, switch student groups and repeat this procedure.

DAY 4**PRESENTATION**

Bring the whole class together. If an art teacher is involved, he takes the lead on this lesson. If not, display or project the painting *Sunflowers*. Share the 9.1 Sample Artwork and Writing. Follow the 9.1 Artwork Directions.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Create artwork inspired by van Gogh.
2. Use bright colors, especially yellow, and thick paint.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Monitor students' artwork for use of van Gogh's colors and thick dashes of paint.

CLOSURE

Display students' artwork around the classroom or library. Think-pair-share responses.

DAY 5**PRESENTATION**

Let students know that they will be writing sentences about van Gogh to accompany their artwork. Their paintings and writings will be displayed together.

Display the paintings around the room. Take a moment or two to admire them. Review all of the notes on van Gogh. Using the 9.1 Prewriting Category Web, students web at least three facts from the texts and at least three responses to the artwork (see the 9.1 Teacher Resource: Prewriting Category Web).

Project the 9.1 Sample Summary and Synthesis. Cover the synthesis and read the summary. Ask: "Does it summarize the ideas in the texts we have read?" Uncover the synthesis and read it. Ask: "What is the difference between these two paragraphs?" Share the 9.1 Synthesis Sentences and Painting Rubric. Discuss synthesis as bringing together information with students' own responses and interpretations.

Students work individually to complete a web and a synthesis.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Web three facts from the texts.
2. Web three responses to the facts or paintings.
3. Write sentences.
4. Conference with a teacher.
5. Self-assess the painting and the writing with the rubric.

GUIDED PRACTICE

The educators support students' prewriting webs and conference with students about their writing.

CLOSURE

Display and view the students' writing and paintings while conducting the reflection.

REFLECTION

What does it mean to synthesize information? When we synthesize our learning, is it enough to share only the facts?

EXTENSIONS

Revisit the three texts used in this unit. *Vincent's Colors* contains primary sources, van Gogh's paintings, and quotes from his letters. *Van Gogh: The Touch of Yellow* is an informational book. *Camille and the Sunflowers* is historical fiction based on an actual event and real characters. Help students begin to develop schemas for these types of resource and genres.

Especially if working with an art teacher, students can create more paintings in the style of van Gogh. Invite students' families or other classrooms to view and respond to the students' artwork and writing. Scan or photograph the work and link it to the library website.

Compose a shared-writing summary of the unit for the library, school, school district newsletter, or local newspaper, radio or television stations.

ALA American
Library
Association

LESSON PLAN 9.2

Reading Comprehension Strategy Seven

Synthesizing

Reading Development Level: Advancing

Instructional Strategies

Notemaking and Summarizing and Cooperative Learning

Lesson Length

6–8 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this unit is to synthesize information from several sources, to distinguish primary from secondary sources, to self-select a product, and to self-assess it using a rubric.

Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to

1. Define primary and secondary sources.
2. Make notes and record sources.
3. Synthesize the information from at least three sources.
4. Design a product to show what they have learned.
5. Self-assess with a checklist.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

The Bus Ride That Changed History: The Story of Rosa Parks, by Pamela Duncan Edwards, illustrated by Danny Shanahan

The Other Side, by Jacqueline Woodson, illustrated by E. B. Lewis

Remember: The Journey to School Integration, by Toni Morrison, illustrated with photographs from the 1950s and 1960s

Rosa, by Nikki Giovanni, illustrated by Bryan Collier

Rosa Parks, by Michelle Levine

This Is the Dream, by Diane Z. Shore and Jessica Alexander, illustrated by James Ransome

Graphic organizers: 9.2 Teacher Resource: Informational Book Self-Monitoring Graphic Organizer, 9.2 Informational Book Self-Monitoring Graphic Organizer, 9.2 Group Information Sheet and Synthesis Product Checklist

9.2 Sample Summary

Materials: One note card per student and one folder for each group

Data projector or interactive whiteboard

Collaboration

Educators model synthesizing information from a variety of sources. They may monitor students' research and product-making processes, or the school librarian may take responsibility for supporting student research in library center rotations. Educators share responsibility for guiding and assessing students' learning products.

Assessment

Students' informational book self-monitoring graphic organizers, synthesis products, and checklists show the process and results of their learning.

Standards

Reading keywords: extract information and use graphic organizers to comprehend text; connect information and events in text to related text and sources

Writing keywords: record information related to the topic; write in a variety of expository forms; organize notes in a meaningful sequence; paraphrase information from at least one source

Listening and speaking keywords: effective vocabulary and logical organization to relate or summarize ideas; presenting a report

Social studies keywords: recognize that individuals worked for and supported the rights and freedoms of others; use primary source materials (e.g., photos, artifacts, interviews, documents, maps) and secondary source materials to study people and events from the past; identify traits of character (e.g., honesty, courage, cooperation, respect, trustworthiness, responsibility, citizenship) that are important to the preservation and improvement of democracy; discuss the branches of state and national government (judicial); retell stories to describe past events, people, and places

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Collaborate with others to broaden and deepen understanding. (1.1.9)
- Continue an inquiry-based research process by applying critical-thinking skills (analysis, synthesis, evaluation, organization) to information and knowledge in order to construct new understandings, draw conclusions, and create new knowledge. (2.1.1)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
- Assess the quality and effectiveness of the learning product. (3.4.2)
- Respond to literature and creative expressions of ideas in various formats and genres. (4.1.3)

PROCESS

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Display the recommended text set for this lesson so that students can view all the book covers. Define primary source documents. Show a selection of photographs from *Remember: The Journey to School Integration*. Discuss these primary source photos. Pair a few illustrations with paintings (secondary sources)

from *This Is the Dream*. (Examples: *Remember*, page 52, with the opening illustration in *This Is the Dream*; *Remember*, page 66, with *This Is the Dream*, pages 29–30.)

Educators coread *This Is the Dream* by reading alternating lines/pages. Invite students to think-pair-share their initial responses to the photographs, paintings, and reading. Volunteers share their responses with the class. Record and save.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Identify primary source and secondary source images.
2. Identify main ideas (five Ws and How).
3. Contribute ideas for group notes orally.

PRESENTATION

Read the titles of the books in this text set. Ask: “Do you know who Rosa Parks was?” Provide a bit of background if the students are unfamiliar with Mrs. Parks. Let students know that the purpose of interacting with this text set is to study and interpret the relationship between Mrs. Parks and the civil rights movement in the United States.

Create a class-size 9.2 Informational Book Self-Monitoring Graphic Organizer (see the 9.2 Teacher Resource: Informational Book Self-Monitoring Graphic Organizer). Review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Record bibliographic information at the top of the self-monitoring sheet.

While one educator reads *Rosa*, the other records class notes on a class-size self-monitoring sheet. (*Rosa* was the mentor text in the chapter 8 advancing fix-up strategy lesson. Ideally, this will be a second reading of this challenging text.)

Students suggest notes and categories for the class-size informational book self-monitoring graphic organizer.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Listen for main ideas (five Ws and How).
2. Raise hand to pause the reading.
3. Share a main idea or an interesting detail.
4. Suggest a note.
5. Choose a category.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators support students in suggesting succinct notes and choosing categories for their notes.

CLOSURE

Review the class notes. Think-pair-share a response to the information about Rosa Parks or the civil rights movement for equality among the races. Record students’ ideas (question 5 on the self-monitoring graphic organizer).

DAY 2

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Determine main ideas and supporting details.
2. Participate in group writing.

PRESENTATION

Students sit in small groups. Reread the class notes from the 9.2 Informational Book Self-Monitoring Graphic Organizer. Using the numbered-heads-together technique, students supply responses; educators record them. Ask: “What are the main ideas?” Circle or highlight them in one color. (Main ideas are noted in red on the 9.2 Teacher Resource: Informational Book Self-Monitoring Graphic Organizer.) Ask: “What are supporting details?” Circle or highlight them in another color.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Number off.
2. Talk with your table group to determine if a note is a main idea or a supporting detail.
3. Answer for the group when the table and your number are called.
4. Contribute ideas to the summary.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor cooperative learning and facilitate a shared-writing summary (see the 9.2 Sample Summary).

CLOSURE

Review the shared-writing summary. Read it chorally. Think-pair-share and orally review the information found in *Remember* and in *This Is the Dream*. Ask: “What information from those two resources could be added to this summary of Rosa?” Brainstorm some ideas using two different marker colors, one for each text. Refer to the students’ personal responses that were recorded after reading the texts.

When we put information together from several sources and combine it with our own thoughts and opinions, we are synthesizing. Let students know that they will be reading one or two more books about Rosa Parks before they synthesize the information and design and produce a product to show what they have learned.

DAY 3**STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES**

1. Identify primary source and secondary source images.
2. Make notes and record book titles, authors, and illustrators.
3. Suggest new information for a summary.
4. Synthesize the information and create a product to show learning.
5. Self-assess the product.

PRESENTATION

Divide the class in half. One educator shares *The Bus Ride That Changed History: The Story of Rosa Parks* with half the class. The other educator reads *Rosa Parks*, a biography, with the other half. Depending on the sophistication of the students, educators can record information on a class-size informational book self-monitoring graphic organizer, or students can make their own notes as the book is read.

The educators or the students record bibliographic information and notes on a 9.2 Informational Book Self-Monitoring Graphic Organizer.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Listen for main ideas (five Ws and How).
2. Raise hand to pause the reading.
3. Share a main idea or an interesting detail.
4. Suggest a note.
5. Choose a category.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators note main ideas and supporting details. They support students in suggesting different types of notes and choosing categories.

CLOSURE

In half-class groups, review the self-monitoring graphic organizer for additional information. Ask: “What new information from the book we just read could be added to our notes on the book *Rosa*?” Circle new information on the graphic organizer. Conduct a shared writing or compose individual responses to question 5.

DAY 4**STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES**

1. Identify and share new information.
2. Brainstorm text-to-text connections.
3. Brainstorm products that can show learning.

PRESENTATION

Bring both groups together. Put them in mixed group partners. Students share their self-monitoring graphic organizers. (If class-size graphic organizers were used, display them or make a copy for each student or share as a class.) Ask: “What new information did you learn?” “What responses do you have to this information?” Educators model taking turns and sharing new information and responses.

Using their graphic organizers as prompts, students share orally with partners.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Take turns.
2. Share new information and responses.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor cooperative learning.

CLOSURE

Read *The Other Side*. Compare the illustration of Clover and Annie holding hands to the final illustration in *Remember*. Ask: “What text-to-text connections can you make among all of the books we have read about Rosa Parks and people of different races working together for equality?” Brainstorm and record ideas. Discuss synthesis as information plus personal responses.

Ask: “How can we synthesize this information? How can we show what we have learned?” Brainstorm some different sign systems that students could use to share their learning, such as a skit, song, poem

or story, mural, dance, print or electronic report, or digital presentation. Record the name of the student who suggested each product. The class can cocreate a sign systems word cloud to use as a prompt for this final product and future synthesis projects.

Students write their first and second choices on note cards. The educators form the groups and designate a communications person from each group before the next session.

DAYS 5–8

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Keep all work in the group folder.
2. Synthesize the information and design a product to show learning.
3. Self-assess the product.

PRESENTATION

The educators share the 9.2 Group Information Sheet and Synthesis Product Checklist. Emphasize that a synthesis is more than a summary. To synthesize, students must add their own ideas, interpretations, and feelings to the information. Students complete the group information section and keep this document in their folders.

Distribute one group information sheet and checklist to each group. Provide groups with folders in which to keep their paperwork.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor collaboration among group members and provide students with any materials they need to achieve their goals for their learning products. They remind groups to review the checklist, particularly as it relates to assessing the synthesis of information in the final product.

CLOSURE

Groups present and self-assess their learning products using the checklist. After each presentation, students are asked to share orally the sources of their information and the ideas they added to this information to synthesize this unit of study.

REFLECTION

What is it called if you only tell the facts that someone else has already written down? What must you add to the facts in order to synthesize? What does it mean to synthesize information?

EXTENSIONS

Some or all groups may decide to share their projects with other classrooms, with the larger school community, or with families. Video or post presentations online. Compose a shared-writing summary of the process and products of this unit of study for the library, school, school district newsletter, or local newspaper, radio, or television stations.

Investigate others who worked for civil rights. Students gather a text set of biographies and historical fiction. To get them started, suggest *Side by Side: The Story of Dolores Huerta and César Chávez / Lado a lado: la historia de Dolores Huerta y César Chávez* (Brown/Cepeda/Rayo) and *Sit-In: How Four Friends Stood Up by Sitting Down* (Pinkney/Pinkney).

LESSON PLAN 9.3

Reading Comprehension Strategy Seven

Synthesizing

Reading Development Level: Advanced

Instructional Strategies

Notemaking and Summarizing, Classifying, and Nonlinguistic Representation

Lesson Length

10–14 sessions

Purpose

The purpose of this unit is to make notes and to synthesize information from multiple sources and formats, to present learning creatively, and to self-assess using a rubric and a checklist.

Objectives

Language arts objectives: At the end of this unit, students will be able to

1. Hear and see patterns in literature, music, and visual art.
2. Make notes and record sources.
3. Synthesize information from multiple sources.
4. Follow the writing process.
5. Compose and assess three to five synthesis paragraphs.
6. Create art in the style of Pablo Picasso and use it as a creative writing prompt.
7. Self-assess with a rubric and a checklist.

Music objectives: At the end of this unit, students will be able to

1. Define terms such as *bebop*, *blues*, *dissonance*, *fusion*, *improvisation*, *jazz*, *ragtime*, *riff*, *syncopation*, and *tempo*.
2. Describe characteristics of various musical genres and cultures (jazz).
3. Communicate meaning through making music (extension).

Visual arts objectives: At the end of this unit, students will be able to

1. Apply subjects, themes, or symbols from various cultural or historical contexts to their own artwork (Picasso and cubism).
2. Communicate meaning through art.

Technology objectives: By engaging in the extension for this lesson, students will be able to

1. Keyboard their writing.
2. Scan or take digital photos of illustrations.

3. Make design decisions during production.
4. Publish and present.

Resources, Materials, and Equipment

Jazz Cats, by David Davis, illustrated by Chuck Galey

9.3 Jazz Topical Text Set (Note: Titles on this web extra bibliography are required to follow the lesson plan as written.)

Jazz Pathfinder: <http://storytrail.com/Impact/Jazz.htm>

Music by Louis Armstrong, John Coltrane, Miles Davis, Duke Ellington, Dizzy Gillespie, and Charlie Parker

Jazz: A Film, by Ken Burns (episode 1: “Gumbo”)

Graphic organizers: 9.3 Build-Know-Wonder-Learn-Question Chart, 9.3 Teacher Resource: Bibliography Graphic Organizer, 9.3 Bibliography Graphic Organizer, 9.3 Teacher Resource: Jazz and Miles Davis Notes, 9.3 Notemaking Graphic Organizer, 9.3 Synthesis Rubric, 9.3 Teacher Resource: Jazz Poem Category Web, 9.3 Jazz Poem Category Web, 9.3 Synthesis Product Checklist

9.3 Sample Synthesis, 9.3 Sample Art and Poetry Product

Materials: Poster, print, or online access to Pablo Picasso’s painting *Three Musicians* and highlighters of at least three different colors for students’ use

Art materials: See 9.3 Artwork Directions.

Internet access, data projector or interactive whiteboard, and CD and DVD players

Collaboration

The educators provide parallel as well as co-taught lessons. They model synthesizing information from a variety of sources in a variety of formats. They both may monitor students’ research and product-making processes, or the school librarian may take responsibility for supporting student research in library center rotations. Educators share responsibility for guiding and assessing students’ learning products. This unit lends itself to extending the collaboration to include art and music teachers.

Assessment

The students’ bibliography and notemaking graphic organizers, synthesis paragraphs, artwork and poems, rubric, and checklist show the process and results of their learning.

Standards

Reading keywords: extract information and use graphic organizers to comprehend text; connect information and events in text to related text and sources

Writing keywords: use written language for a variety of purposes and audiences; six traits of writing (ideas, voice, word choice)

Music keywords: describe characteristics of various musical genres and cultures; analyze how music is used to reflect particular moods and feelings; demonstrate a story utilizing the elements of music (extension)

Social studies keywords: use primary source materials (e.g., photos, artifacts, interviews, documents, maps) and secondary source materials to study people and events from the past

Visual arts keywords: identify cultural and historical symbols for their meaning past and present; apply subjects, themes, or symbols from various cultural or historical contexts to own artwork
 Educational technology keywords (extension): demonstrate functional operation of technology devices; design and create a multimedia presentation; publish and present

AASL STANDARDS INDICATORS*

- Read, view, and listen for information presented in any format (e.g., textual, visual, media, digital) in order to make inferences and gather meaning. (1.1.6)
- Continue an inquiry-based research process by applying critical-thinking skills (analysis, synthesis, evaluation, organization) to information and knowledge in order to construct new understandings, draw conclusions, and create new knowledge. (2.1.1)
- Organize knowledge so it is useful. (2.1.2)
- Assess the quality and effectiveness of the learning product. (3.4.2)
- Use creative and artistic formats to express personal learning. (4.1.8)

PROCESS

This is an outline rather than a detailed procedure. Depending on the time allotted and the level of collaboration with art or music specialists, this unit can expand or contract as needed.

DAY 1

MOTIVATION

Display the 9.3 Jazz Topical Text Set. Educators and students collaborate to read *Jazz Cats*. One educator reads the verses; the other cues the students to say “jazz cats” and provides the jazz cats’ adjective; it changes in each verse.

After reading, begin collecting jazzy terms on a vocabulary web. Students share what they remember from this book: *swingin’, swayin’, groovin’, wailin’, far-out, hepcat, hip, cool daddy*, and so on. Add to this web throughout the unit of study. Educators or students may also want to develop a word cloud of jazz vocabulary to project or display while students are composing their poems.

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Collect jazzy vocabulary.
2. Brainstorm what we already know about jazz.
3. Identify primary source and secondary sources.

PRESENTATION

Read the titles and booktalk the books in this text set. Project a class-size 9.3 Build-Know-Wonder-Learn-Question Chart and distribute individual charts to students. Ask: “What do you know about the musical art form called jazz?” Record ideas in the “K” section of the chart.

Define the words *improvised/improvisation*, *individual expression*, and *collaboration*. Share the first fifteen minutes of *Jazz*, episode 1: “Gumbo.” (Note: The musicians who are described but not named are Jelly Roll Morton, Duke Ellington, Benny Goodman, Billie Holiday, Charlie Parker, Miles Davis, and Louis Armstrong.) Stop the video when narrator Wynton Marsalis talks about gumbo. Ask: “Which components of the video are primary source documents? Which are secondary sources?”

Distribute file folders that contain a 9.3 Bibliography Graphic Organizer and a 9.3 Notemaking Graphic Organizer. Demonstrate a bibliographic entry and notemaking from the video clip. Review the types of notes shown on the Notemaking Chart (as seen in figure 2-2; also available as a web extra). Students suggest and educators record the notes. Emphasize recording the reference number in each note box. (See the 9.3 Teacher Resource: Bibliography Graphic Organizer and the 9.3 Teacher Resource: Jazz and Miles Davis Notes. The notes are color-coded to match the sources; notes in black font are personal responses and interpretations of the information.)

Students suggest notes and copy the bibliographic information and notes onto their individual graphic organizers.

STUDENT PARTICIPATION PROCEDURES

1. Think-pair-share.
2. Share a main idea or an interesting detail with the class.
3. Suggest a note.
4. Record a reference number.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators support students' contributions to the shared notemaking activity and monitor students recording of bibliographic information and notes on their individual notemaking graphic organizers.

CLOSURE

Review the class notes. Think-pair-share something new that students learned about jazz. Think-pair-share responses to this information. Volunteers share with the class.

Discuss the unit. The class investigates jazz through language arts, music, and visual art. They research as a class, and then individuals determine a subtopic, a jazz musician, to research independently. At the end of the unit, students create art in the style of Picasso's cubist work *Three Musicians* and use their artwork as a prompt for composing a jazz poem.

APPROXIMATELY DAYS 2–7

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Add jazzy words to the vocabulary web.
2. Determine notes and record.
3. Record bibliographic information.
4. Record personal responses and interpretations of information.
5. Analyze jazzy poems for word choice, rhythm, and themes.

PRESENTATIONS

Throughout the week, educators share poems from the 9.3 Jazz Topical Text Set. Invite students to respond to the words, rhythm, and themes of these selections. Invite them to practice and read/recite these poems for the class. For fun, also share *Hip Cat* (London/Hubbard).

Educators share the seven starred picture books from the topical text set. Titles can be read in both the classroom and the library. Educators can coteach these books, with one person reading and one person recording bibliography entries and students' notes on class-size graphic organizers. The books can also be read by one or the other educator, or the class can be divided into smaller groups for the readings. If

students are proficient readers, set up small-group center rotations around each of the six books about jazz musicians. Provide a copy of *I See the Rhythm* (Igus/Wood) and *Jazz A-B-Z: An A to Z Collection of Jazz Portraits* (Marsalis/Rogers) for each center.

Before reading each book, play music by that particular musician. (In addition, pair the tape kit of *Charlie Parker Played Be Bop* [Raschka] with *Jazz for Kids: Sing, Clap, Wiggle, and Shake* [CD].) Record bibliographic information and make class notes. Students copy bibliographic information and notes and keep their materials in their research folders. Add jazzy words to the vocabulary web. (If you are not working with a music teacher, begin to define jazz musical terms and add them to the vocabulary web. See music objectives.)

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Suggest jazzy words for the vocabulary web.
2. Make notes and record bibliographic information.
3. Record personal responses and interpretations of information on notemaking sheets.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators monitor students' notemaking and bibliography entries.

CLOSURE

In addition to recording information, invite students to respond to each text by recording ideas, connections, feelings, or questions on their notemaking sheets. Continue this process until students have heard or read all six books.

When all the books have been read, project the 9.3 Build-Know-Wonder-Learn-Question Chart. As a class, begin to fill in the "B" section with the background information students have gained. Students review their notes and complete the "B" section on their own.

APPROXIMATELY DAY 8

GUIDED PRACTICE

Students choose one jazz musician and conduct independent research on that person. Students fill in what they wonder ("W") about a particular musician on their individual copies of the 9.3 Build-Know-Wonder-Learn-Question Chart. Students can use the Jazz Pathfinder, reference books, or any other resources available to them. Individual research can be accomplished with the entire class in a computer lab or library setting, or through small-group rotations through the lab or library, or as homework.

APPROXIMATELY DAY 10

STUDENT-FRIENDLY OBJECTIVES

1. Use the vocabulary web.
2. Web ideas for prewriting.
3. Write a three- to five-paragraph synthesis.
4. Follow the writing process.
5. Revise, edit, and make a final copy.
6. Self-assess paragraphs with the rubric.

PRESENTATION

After students have completed their independent research, educators model synthesizing information. Review all class notes as well as the 9.3 Teacher Resource: Bibliography Graphic Organizer and the 9.3 Teacher Resource: Jazz and Miles Davis Notes. Review the jazzy vocabulary web.

Project the 9.3 Sample Synthesis. Discuss how information came from various sources as noted. (On their final paragraphs, students highlight each resource on the bibliography and information in their paragraphs from that source with the same color.) Emphasize how personal response to the information is included in the synthesis paragraphs. (Students can be asked to write three, four, or five paragraphs.) Assess the paragraphs using the 9.3 Synthesis Rubric.

Students use their own notes to compose synthesis paragraphs and self-assess with a rubric.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Review the vocabulary web and notes.
2. Review the rubric criteria.
3. Web ideas for an introduction (about jazz in general).
4. Web ideas for body paragraphs (about the musician you studied).
5. Draft three to five paragraphs.
6. Revise and edit.
7. Conference with a teacher or peer.
8. Revise, edit, and make a final copy.
9. Highlight information from each source with a different color.
10. Do not highlight your own ideas, connections, or feelings.
11. Self-assess synthesis with the rubric.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators conference with students. They monitor students' work based on the rubric criteria. They remind students of the synthesis goal for this work.

CLOSURE

Students share their paragraphs with a partner who studied a different jazz musician. Students complete their individual 9.3 Build-Know-Wonder-Learn-Question Charts with what they learned ("L") and their remaining questions ("Q").

PRESENTATION

If they have not yet shared them, educators share poems from the 9.3 Jazz Topical Text Set. Project Picasso's *Three Musicians*. If an art teacher is contributing, she takes the lead on this aspect of the unit. If not, define abstract art. Discuss cubism and analyze the painting for color, shape, and feeling/tone. Use the 9.3 Artwork Directions.

Model using the 9.3 Jazz Poem Category Web to gather ideas for both the artwork and the poem (see the 9.3 Teacher Resource: Jazz Poem Category Web). Complete only the musician and instrument at the center before composing a drawing in the cubist style. Cover the poem and share the 9.3 Sample Art and Poetry Product. Assess the illustration with the 9.3 Synthesis Product Checklist.

Students create their artwork using oil pastels.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Decide on the name for an imaginary musician.
2. Choose a jazz instrument.
3. Record the musician and instrument in the center of the category web.
4. Compose an illustration in the cubist style of Picasso's *Three Musicians*.
5. Self-assess using the checklist.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators (including the art teacher) monitor students' use of color, shape, and expression.

CLOSURE

Each student uses the checklist to assess his/her artwork. Can we use our artwork as a writing prompt for a jazz poem?

FINAL DAY**PRESENTATION**

Model using the sample illustration from the 9.3 Sample Art and Poetry Product as a writing prompt. Fill in the 9.3 Jazz Poem Category Web based on that individual piece of art. Use jazz terms from the vocabulary web. Discuss alliteration as one way poets give their work rhythm.

Share the sample poem from the sample art and poetry product and use the 9.3 Synthesis Product Checklist to assess the poem. Point out the alliteration in the poem.

Students compose individual poems and read them to a classmate.

STUDENT PRACTICE PROCEDURES

1. Use artwork as a prompt.
2. Review the vocabulary web.
3. Complete the jazz poem category web.
4. Compose a poem based on your own artwork.
5. Assess the poem using the checklist.
6. Revise if necessary.
7. Read poem to a classmate.

GUIDED PRACTICE

Educators facilitate writing conferences.

CLOSURE

Play jazz music. Share poems and display the artwork. Decide as a class how to share the artwork and poems with a larger audience.

REFLECTION

What does it mean to synthesize information? How do we let viewers or readers know where we got our information? Why is this important? After conducting research, what are some ways we can show what we learned?

EXTENSIONS

Students can scan or take digital photographs of their artwork and keyboard their poems. They can create a slideshow of their work for a print or electronic book. They can also record podcasts and post their work on a website. Students may decide to share their poems and solicit feedback from other classrooms, their families, or the larger school community. Students may set their poems to jazz rhythms or music. Compose a shared-writing summary of the unit for the library, school, school district newsletter, or local newspaper, radio, or television stations.



References

- AASL American Association of School Librarians. 2007. *Standards for the 21st-century learner*. Chicago: American Library Association. www.ala.org/aasl/standards.
- . 2009a. *Empowering learners: Guidelines for school library programs*. Chicago: American Library Association.
- . 2009b. Position statement on the school librarian's role in reading. www.ala.org/ala/mgrps/divs/aasl/aaslissues/positionstatements/roleinreading.cfm.
- AASL and AECT American Association of School Librarians and Association for Educational Communications and Technology. 1988. *Information power: Guidelines for school library media programs*. Chicago: American Library Association.
- Achterman, Douglas L. 2008. *Haves, halves, and have-nots: School libraries and student achievement in California*. Denton, Texas. UNT Digital Library. <http://digital.library.unt.edu/ark:/67531/metadc9800/m1/>.
- Ackerman, Diane. 1990. *A natural history of the senses*. New York: Random House.
- Allen, Janet. 2004. *Tools for teaching content literacy*. Portland, ME: Stenhouse.
- Arnold, D. S., and Grover J. Whitehurst. 1994. Accelerating language development through picture book reading: A summary of dialogic reading and its effect. In *Bridges to literacy: Approaches to supporting child and family literacy*, ed. D. K. Dickinson, 103–28. Cambridge, MA: Basil Blackwell.
- Barth, Roland. S. 2006. Improving relationships within the schoolhouse. *Educational Leadership* 63 (6): 9–13.

- Beck, Isabel L., Margaret G. McKeown, Rebecca L. Hamilton, and Linda Kucan. 1997. *Questioning the author: An approach to enhancing student engagement with text*. Newark, DE: International Reading Association.
- Bloom, Benjamin S., et al. 1956. *A taxonomy of educational objectives: Handbook I. The cognitive domain*. New York: David McKay.
- Champlin, Connie. 1998. *Storytelling with puppets*. Chicago: American Library Association.
- Christie, James F., Billy Enz, and Carol Vukelich. 2003. *Teaching language and literacy: Preschool through the elementary grades*. 2nd ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon.
- Cushman, Karen. 1996. Newbery acceptance speech. *Horn Book Magazine* 72 (July/August): 413–19.
- Dean, Ceri B., Elizabeth Ross Hubbell, Howard Pitler, and Bj Stone. 2012. *Classroom instruction that works: Research-based strategies for increasing student achievement*. 2nd ed. Alexandria, VA: Association of Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Dow, Mirah. 2010. Taking the lead: School library leadership at the university level. *School Library Monthly* 27 (3): 36–38.
- DuFour, Rick. 2001. In the right context: The effective leader concentrates on a foundation of programs, procedures, beliefs, expectations, and habits. *Journal of Staff Development* 22 (1): 14–17.
- Echevarria, Jana, MaryEllen Vogt, and Deborah J. Short. 2008. *Making content comprehensible for English language learners: The SIOP model*. 3rd ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon.
- Friend, Marilyn, and Lynne Cook. 2010. *Interactions: Collaboration skills for school professionals*. 6th ed. Boston: Pearson.
- Fullan, Michael. 2003. *Change forces with a vengeance*. London: Routledge Farmer.
- Gardner, Howard. 1993. *Multiple intelligences: The theory in practice*. New York: Basic Books.
- Hall, Susan. 2007. *Using picture storybooks to teach literary devices: Recommended books for children and young adults*, vol. 4. Santa Barbara, CA: Libraries Unlimited.
- Harada, Violet H., and Joan M. Yoshina. 2005. *Assessing learning: Librarians and teachers as partners*. Westport, CT: Libraries Unlimited.
- Hunter, Madeline. 1994. *Mastery teaching*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Corwin Press.
- Jackman, Hilda L. 1997. *Early education curriculum: A child's connection to the world*. Albany, NY: Delmar.
- Jansen, Barbara A. 2007. *The Big6 in middle school: Teaching information and communications technology skills*. Santa Barbara, CA: Libraries Unlimited.
- Kachel, Debra E., et al. 2011. School library research summarized: A graduate class project. Mansfield, PA: School of Library and Information Technologies Department, Mansfield University. <http://libweb.mansfield.edu/upload/kachel/ImpactStudy.pdf>.
- Keene, Ellin Oliver, and Susan Zimmermann. 1997. *Mosaic of thought: Teaching comprehension in a reader's workshop*. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.
- Koechlin, Carol, and Sandi Zwaan. 2006. *Q tasks: How to empower students to ask questions and care about answers*. Portland, ME: Stenhouse.
- Krashen, Stephen D. 2004. *The power of reading: Insights from the research*. Westport, CT: Libraries Unlimited.
- Lieberman, Ann. 1995. Restructuring schools: The dynamics of changing practice, structure, and culture. In *The work of restructuring schools: Building from the ground up*, ed. A. Lieberman, 1–17. New York: Teachers College Press.
- Loertscher, David V. 2000. *Taxonomies of the school library media program*. Salt Lake City: Hi Willow.
- Loertscher, David V., Carol Koechlin, and Sandi Zwaan. 2004. *Ban those bird units: 15 models for teaching and learning in information-rich and technology-rich environments*. Salt Lake City: Hi Willow.
- . 2008. *The new learning commons: Where learners win*. Salt Lake City: Hi Willow.
- Manzo, Anthony V. 1969. The request procedure. *Journal of Reading* 13 (2): 123–26.
- Marzano, Robert J. 2003. *What works in schools: Translating research into action*. Alexandria, VA: Association of Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- . 2004. *Building background knowledge for academic achievement: Research on what works in schools*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Marzano, Robert J., Debra J. Pickering, and Jane E. Pollock. 2001. *Classroom instruction that works: Research-based strategies for increasing student achievement*. Alexandria, VA: Association of Supervision and Curriculum Development.

- McGee, Lea M., and Donald J. Richgels. 1996. *Literacy's beginnings: Supporting young readers and writers*. 2nd ed. Boston: Allyn and Bacon.
- McKenzie, Jamie A. 1997. Questioning toolkit. *From Now On: The Educational Technology Journal* 7 (3). <http://fno.org/nov97/toolkit.html>.
- Meek, Margaret. 1988. *How texts teach what readers learn*. Stroud, Gloucestershire: Thimble Press.
- Moreillon, Judi. 2003. Peace doves and Picasso poems: Literature, art, technology, and poetry. ReadWriteThink.org. www.readwritethink.org/lessons/lesson_view.asp?id=93.
- . 2007. *Collaborative strategies for teaching reading comprehension: Maximizing your impact*. Chicago: American Library Association.
- . 2008. Two heads are better than one: Influencing preservice classroom teachers' understanding and practice of classroom-library collaboration. *School Library Media Research* 11. www.ala.org/ala/mgrps/divs/aasl/aaslpubsandjournals/slmrb/slmrcontents/volume11.
- . 2012. Job-embedded professional development: An orchard of opportunity. In *Growing schools: Librarians as professional developers*, ed. D. Abilock, K. Fontichiaro, and V. Harada. Santa Barbara, CA: ABC-CLIO.
- Moreillon, Judi, and Susan Ballard. 2012. Coteaching: A pathway to leadership. *Knowledge Quest* 40 (4): 6–9.
- O'Brien-Palmer, Michelle. 1998. *Sense-abilities: Fun ways to explore the senses*. Chicago: Chicago Review Press.
- Ouzts, D. T. 1998. Enhancing literacy using the question-answer relationship. *Social Studies and the Young Learner* 10 (4): 26–28.
- P21 Partnership for 21st Century Skills. 2006. *Results that matter: 21st century skills and high school reform*. <http://p21.org/storage/documents/RTM2006.pdf>.
- Rosenblatt, Louise M. 1978. *The reader, the text, the poem: The transactional theory of the literary work*. Carbondale, IL: Southern Illinois University Press.
- . 1995. *Literature as exploration*. 5th ed. New York: Modern Language Association of America.
- Schmoker, Mike. 2011. *Focus: Elevating the essentials to radically improve student learning*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Short, Kathy G., Jerome C. Harste, with Carolyn Burke. 1996. *Creating classrooms for authors and inquirers*. 2nd ed. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.
- Short, Kathy Gnagey, and Kathryn Mitchell Pierce, eds. 1990. *Talking about books: Creating literate communities*. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.
- Sousa, David A. 2005. *How the brain learns*. 3rd ed. Thousand Oaks, CA: Corwin Press.
- Sparks, Dennis. 2007. *Leading for results: Transforming teaching, learning, and relationships in schools*. 2nd ed. Thousand Oaks, CA: Corwin Press.
- Todd, Ross. 2001. Evidence based practice: The sustainable future for teacher-librarians. *SCAN* 20 (1): 1–8.
- Wald, Penelope J., and Michael S. Castleberry, eds. 2000. *Educators as learners: Creating a professional learning community in your school*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Whitebread, David, ed. 2000. *The psychology of teaching and learning in the primary school*. New York: Routledge.
- Wiggins, Grant, and Jay McTighe. 2005. *Understanding by design*. 2nd ed. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Wilhelm, Jeffrey D. 2001. *Improving comprehension with think-aloud strategies: Modeling what good readers do*. New York: Scholastic.
- Wolfe, Patricia. 2001. *Brain matters: Translating research into classroom practice*. Alexandria, VA: Association of Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Zimmermann, Susan, and Chryse Hutchins. 2003. *Seven keys to comprehension: How to help your kids read it and get it!* New York: Three Rivers Press.
- Zmuda, Alison, and Violet H. Harada. 2008. *Librarians as learning specialists: Meeting the learning imperative for the 21st century*. Westport, CT: Libraries Unlimited.

Index

A

Achoo! Bang! Crash! A Noisy Alphabet (MacDonald), 46, 48

activating (strategy)

- about, 19–20
- connection types, 21–23
- lesson plans, 26–39
- literature connections, 26
- strategy how-to, 21

active reading check, 127

Ada, Alma Flor, 47, 48

Adoff, Arnold, 43, 48

adult learning in schools, 7

advanced readers (lesson plans)

- activating or building background, 35–39
- determining main ideas, 120–123
- fix-up options, 138–141
- making predictions, 98–101
- questioning, 75–79
- sensory images, 56–59
- synthesizing, 159–166

advancing readers (lesson plans)

- activating or building background, 31–34
- determining main ideas, 115–119
- fix-up options, 134–137
- making predictions, 94–97
- questioning, 71–74
- sensory images, 53–55
- synthesizing, 153–158

Alexander, Jessica, 147

Allen, Janet, 15

alternative teaching, 5

Amber on the Mountain (Johnston), 26

Amelia and Eleanor Go for a Ride (Ryan), 67

Amelia Earhart (Brown), 67

American Association of School Librarians, 1

analyzing skills, 62

Andriana, Renée, 67

Anholt, Laurence, 146

Arnold, D. S., 63

Assessing Learning (Harada and Yoshina), 5

assessments

- sensory images and, 42
- tools for, 11

Astrella, Mark, 47

auditory components, adding, 42

author studies, conceptual framework, 24

B

B-K-W-L-Q chart, 20

background knowledge

- about, 19–20
- connection types, 21–23
- lesson plans, 26–39
- literature connections, 23–25
- strategy how-to, 21

backward planning, 10

Bacon, Paul, 88

A Ballet for Martha (Greenberg and Jordan), 26

Ban Those Bird Units (Loetscher, Koechlin, and Zwaan), 146

Barth, Roland, 6

Bartholomew and the Oobleck (Seuss), 46, 48

Bartoletti, Susan Campbell, 43

Bee-bim Bop! (Park), 47, 48

Bergman, Mara, 48

best practices, 10–13
 The Blind Men and the Elephant (fable), 13–14
 Blood, Charles L., 49
 body-kinesthetic intelligences, 42
 Bond, Felicia, 88
The Boy Who Loved Words (Schotter), 88
 Bradby, Marie, 67
 Brett, Jan, 88
 Brown, Jonathan A., 67
 Brown, Margaret Wise, 48, 104–105
 Brown, Monica, 146
 Browne, Anthony, 130
 Bruchac, Joseph, 47
 Bunting, Eve, 26, 88
 Burningham, John, 88
The Bus Ride That Changed History (Edwards), 146

C

Caduto, Michael J., 47
Camille and the Sunflowers (Anholt), 146
 Campoy, F. Isabel, 48
 Carle, Eric, 46, 48, 88
Carlo and the Really Nice Librarian (Spanyol), 109
 Carlson, Nancy, 26
 Carmi, Giora, 47
 Carroll, Lewis, 126, 130
The Carrot Seed (Krauss), 42–43, 47
 cartoons, making predictions and, 86
 Catrow, David, 48, 88
Cendrillon (San Souci), 26
 center teaching, 5
 Cepeda, Joe, 146
Cha-Cha Chimps (Durango), 84, 88
 Chapman, Lee, 88
 character maps, 104
 characters
 literature connections and, 23
 main ideas and, 103
 Charlip, Remy, 88
Chato and the Party Animals (Soto), 88
Chato Goes Cruisin' (Soto), 88
Chato's Kitchen (Soto), 88
 Chiago, Michael, 26
Cinderella (Perrault), 26
 Cinderella variant category matrix, 25
A Circle of Friends (Carmi), 45, 47
Classroom Instruction That Works (Marzano et. al), 11, 106
 classroom-library collaboration, 1
Clickety Clack (Spence), 46, 48
 closed-ended questions, 63
 cloze procedures, 128
 coassessing, 5
 Cobb, Vicki, 43

collaborative teaching
 about, 1–2
 librarians as leaders, 2–4
 professional development, 6–8
 school reform and, 6
 strategies for, 4–6
 Collier, Bryan, 130, 146
 Colón, Raúl, 67
Come Away from the Water, Shirley (Burningham), 87, 88
Come on, Rain! (Hesse), 47
 Common Core State Standards, 2, 11
 community, literature connections and, 24
 comprehension, questioning and, 62
 conceptual framework, 24
 Condra, Estelle, 44, 48
 connection types
 activating or building background, 21
 developing main ideas, 108–109
 fix-up options, 129–130
 predictions and inferences, 84–88
 questioning, 65–67
 sensory images, 43–48
 synthesizing, 144–146
 Cook, Lynne, 4
 cooperative learning, 13
 Cornell Note-Taking System, 106
 coteaching, defined, 4
 Crews, Donald, 88
 Crockett-Blassingame, Linda, 44, 48
 crystallized intelligence, 20
 Cuyler, Margery, 88

D

Davis, David, 146
 Davis, Kenneth, 65, 67
The Day of Ahmed's Secret (Heide), 67
 decoding skills, 3, 15
 Desimini, Lisa, 43, 48
 developmental levels, 15
 dialogic reading, 63
 The Discovery Library series, 108
Don't Know Much about the Pioneers (Davis), 65, 67
 Dooley, Norah, 48
The Doorbell Rang (Hutchins), 47, 48
 Driscoll, Dan, 109
 Duncan, Robert, 26
 Durango, Julia, 88

E

Edwards, Pamela Duncan, 146
The Egyptian Cinderella (Climo), 25, 26
 Ehrlich, Amy, 25, 26
Eight Animals Bake a Cake (Elya), 88
Eight Animals on the Town (Elya), 88

Eight Animals Play Ball (Elya), 88
Eleanor Roosevelt (Brown), 67
 elements, conceptual framework, 24
 Elya, Susan Middleton, 88
 Emberley, Michael, 84, 89
 emerging readers (lesson plans)
 activating or building background, 27–30
 determining main ideas, 111–114
 fix-up options, 131–133
 making predictions, 90–93
 questioning, 68–70
 sensory images, 49–52
 synthesizing, 148–152
Empowering Learners (AASL), 1–2
 The English Companion (website), 106
 English language learners, literary impact on, 17
 Erlbach, Arlene, 110
 Escrivá, Vivi, 48
Estrellita de oro (Hayes), 25, 26
 evaluation skills, 62
Everybody Brings Noodles (Dooley), 47, 48
Everybody Cooks Rice (Dooley), 47, 48
 evidence, locating in text, 85
 evidence-based practice, 10

F

Fadden, John Kahionhes, 47
 fictional texts, 104
 fix-up options (strategy)
 about, 125–127
 lesson plans, 130–141
 literature connections, 130
 sample, 126
 strategy how-to, 127–130
 Floca, Brian, 26
Fly Away Home (Bunting), 23, 26, 87, 88
 formatting lessons, impact of, 14–16
Fortunately (Charlip), 87, 88
 Freedman, Russell, 43
Freedom Summer (Wiles), 88
 Friend, Marilyn, 4
Froggy Goes to School (London), 26

G

Galey, Chuck, 146
 Gardner, Howard, 42
 Garland, Sherry, 89
Gathering the Sun (Ada), 47
 genres, conceptual framework, 24
 Geraldine, 48
 Gibbons, Gail, 88
 Gilliland, Judith Heide, 67
 Giovanni, Nikki, 130, 146
The Goat in the Rug (Blood and Martin), 46, 48

Goin' Someplace Special (McKissack), 88
 Goode, Diane, 26
 Goodman, John, 147
 graphic organizers, 11, 17, 104
 graphs, creating, 13
 Graves, Linda, 67
Green Eggs and Ham (Seuss), 47, 48
 Greenberg, Jan, 26
 Greenwood, Rosie, 27
 Guevera, Susan, 88

H

Halls, Kelly Milner, 110
 Harada, Violet H., 8
 Harper, Charise Mericle, 109
 Hayes, Joe, 26
 hearing, sensory images and, 43–47
 Heide, Florence Parry, 67
 Heller, Ruth, 26
Hello Ocean (Ryan), 47
 Hesse, Karen, 47
 Himler, Ronald, 26, 88
 Hoberman, Mary Ann, 84, 89
How to Make an Apple Pie (Priceman), 47, 48
 how-to strategies
 activating or building background, 21
 fix-up options, 127–130
 formatting, 15
 main ideas, 105–108
 predictions and inferences, 82–87
 questioning, 63–65
 sensory images, 42–43
 synthesizing, 144–146
 Hunter, Sara Hoagland, 89
Hush Songs (Thomas), 46, 48
 Hutchins, Chryse, 9, 21, 104, 128
 Hutchins, Pat, 48, 88

I

I Want to Be a Librarian (Liebman), 109
I Wonder Why Volcanoes Blow Their Tops (Greenwood), 65, 67
If You Give a Moose a Muffin (Numeroff), 88
If You Give a Mouse a Cookie (Joffe), 88
If You Give a Pig a Pancake (Joffe), 88
If You Take a Mouse to School (Joffe), 88
 illustrations defined, 16
 illustrator studies, conceptual framework, 24
I'm Still Here in the Bathtub (Katz), 46, 48
Imaginative Inventions (Harper), 109
The Important Book (Brown), 47, 104
 independent reading, 15
 inferences, predictions and
 about, 81–82

 lesson plans, 89–101
 literature connections, 84–89
 strategy how-to, 82–87
 information commons, 7
 Informational Book Self-Monitoring
 Graphic Organizer, 108, 144
 informational texts, 104
 instructional strategies, student
 achievement and, 13
 International Society for Technology, 11
 interviews, diagnostic tool, 15
The Inventor's Times (Driscoll), 109

J

Jansen, Barbara A., 106
Jazz Cats (Davis), 146
 Jeffers, Susan, 25
 Johnson, Crockett, 47
 Johnston, Tony, 26, 48
 Jordan, Sandra, 26
 Joysmith, Brenda, 48
Just a Minute! (Morales), 84, 88

K

K-W-L charts, 20
 Kasza, Keiko, 88
 Katz, Alan, 48
 Keene, Ellin Oliver, 21, 104
Keepers of the Earth (Caduto and Bruchac), 43–45, 47
The Kid Who Invented the Popsicle (Wulffson), 110
The Kid Who Invented the Trampoline (Wulffson), 110
The Kids' Invention Book (Erlbach), 110
 kinesthetic activities, 13
 Koechlin, Carol, 62, 146
 Krauss, Ruth, 47

L

language, sensory images and, 42
 learning tasks, 10–11
 Lee, Ho Baek, 48
 lesson plans (samples)
 determining main ideas, 111–123
 fix-up options, 131–141
 predictions and inferences, 90–101
 questioning, 68–79
 sensory images, 49–59
 synthesizing, 148–166
 using background knowledge, 27–39
 lessons, literary impact and, 14–16
 Levine, Michelle, 146
 Lewin, Ted, 67
 Lewis, E. B., 146
 library collaboration, benefit of, 7
 Liebman, Daniel, 109

Link, Martin, 48
 literary impact
 about, 9–10
 best practices in strategies, 10–13
 comprehension strategies, 13–14
 English language learners and, 17
 lessons and format, 14–16
 maximizing, 17
 literature connection types
 background knowledge, 23–25
 developing main ideas, 108–109
 fix-up options, 130
 predictions and inferences, 84–88
 questioning, 65–67
 sensory images, 43–48
 synthesizing, 146
 Locker, Thomas, 48
 Loertscher, David V., 146
 London, Jonathan, 26
Look Out Kindergarten (Carlson), 26
 Louie, Ai-Ling, 26
 Loumaye, Jacqueline, 147

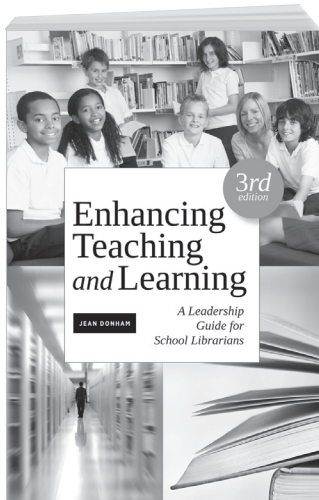
M

MacDonald, Ross, 48
 Madeline Hunter Model, 16
 main ideas, determining
 about, 103–105
 lesson plans, 110–123
 literature connections, 108
 strategy how-to, 105–108
 Maland, Nick, 48
 Markle, Sandra, 43, 110
 Marks, Alan, 110
 Martin, Bill, Jr., 46
 Marzano, Robert J., 6, 11
 materials and resources, 16
 matrix
 predictions and inferences, 85
 questioning, 64
Mayflower 1620 (Plimoth Plantation), 67
 McGee, Lea M., 19–20
 McKenzie, Jamie A., 62
 McKissack, Patricia, 88
 McTighe, Jay, 10
 mental pictures, sensory images and, 42
 Merriam, Eve, 67
 metaphors, constructing, 14
 Mexican American culture, 87
The Midwife's Apprentice (Cushman), 62
 Miner, Julia, 89
The Mitten (Brett), 87, 88
 modeling
 developing main ideas, 108–109
 fix-up options, 126–128
 predictions and inferences, 84–88
 question strategy, 62

- modeling (cont.)
 synthesizing, 143
 text-to-self connections, 21
 monitoring comprehension, 127
 Mora, Pat, 67
 Morales, Yuyi, 48, 88
More Than Anything Else (Bradby), 67
 Morgan, Pierr, 48
 Morrison, Toni, 146
Mosaic of Thought (Keene and Zimmerman), 104
A Mother's Journey (Markle), 110
Mufaro's Beautiful Daughters (Step toe), 26
 Murphy, Jim, 43
 musical intelligences, 42
 Muth, Jon J., 47
My Abuelita (Johnston), 48
My Lucky Day (Kasza), 82, 88
My Name Is Yoon (Recorvits), 26
The Mysteries of Harris Burdick (Van Allsburg), 88
- N**
 National Geographic's Reading Expeditions, 108
 Nelson, Kadir, 66, 67
 NETS*S, 11
The New Kid on the Block (Prelutsky), 43, 48
Night Wonders (Peddicord), 108, 110
 nonlinguistic representation, 13
 NoodleTools, 11
 notemaking, 11
 Numeroff, Laura Joffe, 88
- O**
 observation, diagnostic tool, 15
Officer Buckle and Gloria (Rathmann), 87, 88
The Other Side (Woodson), 146
 Ouzts, D. T., 64
Over in the Garden (Ward), 46, 48
Owl Moon (Yolen), 48
- P**
 parallel teaching, 5
 Park, Linda Sue, 48
 Parker, Nancy Winslow, 48
 Patterned Language Books for Reading Aloud, 87
 Peddicord, Jane Ann, 110
 Perez, Gloria Osuna, 26
 Perez, Lucia Angela, 26
 Perrault, Charles, 26
 Pickering, Debra J., 11, 42
 pictographs, 42
 pictures showing learning, 13
 Pinkney, Andrea Davis, 146
 Pinkney, Brian, 26, 146
 Pinkney, Jerry, 88
Pio Peep! (Ada and Campoy), 46, 48
 plagiarism, 11
 plots
 literature connections and, 23
 main ideas and, 103
 point of practice, 6–8
 Polacco, Patricia, 9, 88
The Polar Express (Van Allsburg), 42, 48
 Pollock, Jane E., 11, 42
 Prange, Beckie, 110
 predictions and inferences
 about, 81–82
 lesson plans, 89–101
 literature connections, 84–89
 strategy how-to, 82–87
 Prelutsky, Jack, 43, 45, 48
 Priceman, Marjorie, 48
 Pringle, Laurence, 43
 print defined, 16
 professional development, collaboration and, 6–8
 professional learning communities, 2
 prompts, text types, 85
 props, sensory images and, 43
- Q**
 question-answer relationships (QARs), 64, 65
 questioning (strategy)
 about, 61–63
 lesson plans, 67–79
 literature connections, 65–67
 strategy how-to, 63–65
 questioning the author (QtA), 65
- R**
 Ransome, James, 147
 Raschka, Chris, 26
 Rathmann, Peggy, 88
 reading (before, during, after exercises)
 key contributors, 2
 making connections, 22
 predictions and inferences, 83–84
 questioning, 66
 school librarians role in, 3
 sensory images, 44
 transaction theory, 19, 23
 reading comprehension strategies
 defined, 9
 determining main ideas, 103–109
 fix-up options, 125–130
 predictions and inferences, 81–89
 questioning, 61–67
 sensory images, 41–48
 synthesizing, 143–147
 using background knowledge, 19–26
 Reading Quest series, 108
 reading transaction theory, 19, 23
 reciprocal questioning, 65
 Recorvits, Helen, 26
Remember (Morrison), 146
 Remkiewicz, Frank, 26
 ReQuest, 65
 research-based instruction, 10
 resources, evaluating, 146
 resources and materials, 16
 Response to Intervention, 2
 rhyming poems, predictions and, 84
 Richgels, Donald J., 20
 role-play, 13
Rosa (Giovanni), 130, 146
Rosa Parks (Levine), 146
 Rosenblatt, Louise M., 19, 23
Rosie's Walk (Hutchins), 87, 88
 Roucha, Claudine, 147
 Ryan, Pam Muñoz, 47, 67
 Rylant, Cynthia, 26
- S**
 sample lesson plans
 determining main ideas, 111–123
 fix-up options, 131–141
 predictions and inferences, 90–101
 questioning, 68–79
 sensory images, 49–59
 synthesizing, 148–166
 using background knowledge, 27–39
 San Souci, Robert D., 25, 26
 schemas
 defined, 20
 main ideas and, 104
 sensory images and, 41–42
 Schertle, Alice, 48
 Schmoker, Mike, 16
 Schoenherr, John, 48
 school librarians as leaders, 2–4
 School Library Impact Studies, 10
 school reform, collaboration and, 6
 Schotter, Roni, 88
Scrambled Eggs Super! (Seuss), 47, 48
The Seasons of Arnold's Apple Tree (Gibbons), 84, 88
See the Ocean (Condra), 44, 48
 self-monitoring
 comprehension and, 127
 fix-up options, 129
 synthesizing and, 145
 self-reporting, diagnostic tool, 15
 Selznick, Brian O., 67
Sense-Abilities (O'Brien-Palmer), 43

- sensory images
 about, 41–42
 lesson plans, 48–59
 literature connections, 43–48
 strategy how-to, 42–43
- setting
 literature connections and, 23
 main ideas and, 103
- Seuss, 47, 48
- Shanahan, Danny, 146
- Shannon, George, 88
- Shaw, Alison, 48
- She'll Be Comin' 'Round the Mountain*
 (Sturges), 46, 48
- Shore, Diane Z., 147
- Side by Side* (Brown), 146
- Sidman, Joyce, 110
- Siebert, Diane, 48
- sight, sensory images and, 43–46
- Silva, Simón, 47
- Silverstein, Shel, 45
- similes comparing senses, 43
- Simon, Seymour, 43
- Simple Gifts* (Raschka), 26
- Sing Down the Rain* (Moreillon), 26
- Sit-In* (Pinkney), 146
- Snip Snap! What's That?* (Bergman), 46, 48
- Soentpiet, Chris K., 67
- Song of the Water Boatman* (Sidman), 108, 110
- Sootface* (San Souci), 26
- Soto, Gary, 88
- Sousa, David A., 41
- Spanyol, Jessica, 108
- Spence, Rob and Amy, 48
- Spengler, Kenneth, 48
- Spengler, Margaret, 48
- 21st-century learners, 2
- standardized tests, 13
- Standards for the 21st-Century Learner*, 2–3, 11
- Stanley, Diane, 43
- station teaching, 5
- Steptoe, John, 26
- story elements, conceptual framework, 25, 103
- story maps, 104
- Storytelling with Puppets* (Champlin), 43
- strategies
 best practices in, 10–13
 building background knowledge, 21
 collaborative teaching types, 4–6
 comprehension styles, 13–14
 fix-up options, 127–130
 main ideas, 105–108
 predictions and inferences, 82–87
 questioning, 63–65
- sensory images, 42–43
- synthesizing, 144–146
- structure, conceptual framework, 25
- student achievement, 1, 3, 6, 13
- student assessment, 42
- study skills, 108
- Sturges, Philemon, 48
- Swiatkowska, Gabi, 26
- synthesizing
 about, 143–144
 lesson plans, 147–166
 literature connections, 146
 skills for, 62
 strategy how-to, 144–146
- T**
- Take Me Out of the Bathtub* (Katz), 46, 48
- taste, sensory images and, 43, 47–48
- Taxonomies of the School Library Media Program* (Loertcher), 3
- Taylor, Eleanor, 89
- teacher-initiated questions, 61
- teaching, best practices, 10–13
- team teaching approaches, 5
- Teammates* (Golenbock), 89
- Terry, Will, 49
- Testing Miss Malarkey* (Finchler), 1
- text
 conceptual framework features, 25
 defined, 16
 prompts for, 85
- text-to-self connections, 21
- text-to-text connections, 21–23
- text-to-world connections, 23
- textbooks, features of, 108–109
- Thank You, Mr. Falker* (Polacco), 13
- That's Good, That's Bad* (Cuyler), 87, 88
- Thematic Text Set, 26
- themes
 illustrations and, 87
 main ideas and, 103
- think-aloud strategies, 10, 17, 126–130
- This Is the Dream* (Shore), 147
- Thomas, Joyce Carol, 48
- Thornton, Peter J., 48
- Through the Looking Glass* (Carroll), 130
- Thunder Cake* (Polacco), 84, 88
- Today Is Monday* (Carle), 84, 88
- Todd, Ross, 10
- Tomás and the Library Lady* (Mora), 67
- Tomorrow's Alphabet* (Shannon), 84, 88
- Tool for Real-time Assessment of Information Literacy Skills, 5
- Tools for Teaching Content Literacy* (Allen), 106
- topics, conceptual framework, 24
- touch, sensory images and, 46–47
- Touch the Poem* (Adoff), 43, 48
- Train Song* (Seibert), 42, 48
- The Treasure of Ghostwood Gully* (Vaughan), 48
- The Turnip* (Morgan), 47, 48
- Two Bad Ants* (Van Allsburg), 89
- U**
- The Unbreakable Code* (Hunter), 89
- Until I Saw the Sea* (Shaw), 48
- Using Picture Story Books* (Hall), 46, 87
- V**
- Valencia, Carolina, 146
- Van Allsburg, Chris, 42, 88, 89
- Van Gogh* (Loumaye), 147
- variants, conceptual framework, 24
- Vaughan, Marcia, 48
- The Very Busy Spider* (Carle), 47, 49
- Vincent's Colors* (van Gogh), 147
- visual-spatial intelligences, 42
- Voices in the Park* (Browne), 130
- Voices of the Alamo* (Garland), 89
- W**
- Ward, Jennifer, 48
- Water Dance* (Locker), 48
- We Are the Ship* (Nelson), 66, 67
- webbing, 11
- Weisgard, Leonard, 47
- What Works in Schools* (Marzano), 6
- When I Was Young in the Mountains* (Rylant), 26
- Where the Wild Things Are* (Sendak), 87, 89
- Whitehurst, Grover J., 63
- Wiggins, Grant, 10
- Wild Dogs* (Halls), 106, 110
- Wimmer, Michael, 48
- The Wise Woman and Her Secret* (Merriam), 62, 67
- Wolff, Ashley, 48
- Wood, Carol, 47
- Woodson, Jacqueline, 146
- Wulfson, Don L., 110
- Y**
- Yeh-Shen* (Louie), 26
- Yolen, Jane, 48
- You Read to Me, I'll Read to You* (Hoberman), 84, 89
- Young, Ed, 13–14, 26
- Z**
- Zigarelli, James, 110
- Zimmermann, Susan, 9, 21, 104, 128
- Zwaan, Sandi, 62

You may also be interested in

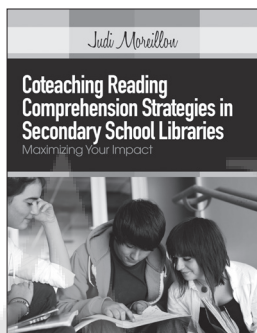


Enhancing Teaching and Learning, Third Edition A Leadership Guide for School Librarians

JEAN DONHAM

Readers will benefit from this complete coverage of the school environment—common staff structures, budget issues, and more.

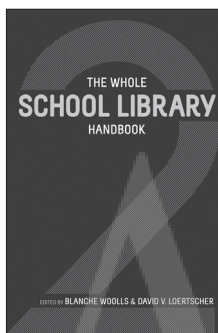
ISBN: 978-1-55570-887-0
344 PAGES / 6" x 9"



COTEACHING READING COMPREHENSION STRATEGIES IN SECONDARY SCHOOL LIBRARIES

JUDI MOREILLON

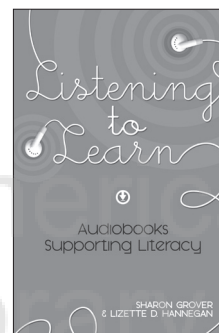
ISBN: 978-0-8389-1088-7



THE WHOLE SCHOOL LIBRARY HANDBOOK 2

EDITED BY BLANCHE WOOLLS
AND DAVID V. LOERTSCHER

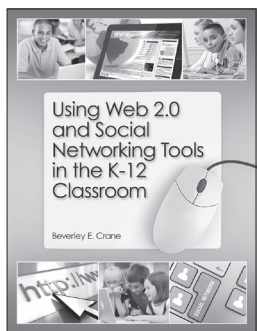
ISBN: 978-0-8389-1127-3



LISTENING TO LEARN Audiobooks Supporting Literacy

SHARON GROVER AND
LIZETTE D. HANNEGAN

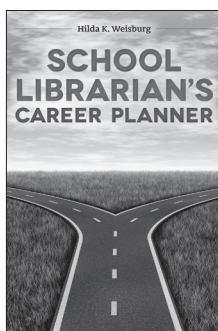
ISBN: 978-0-8389-1107-5



USING WEB 2.0 AND SOCIAL NETWORKING TOOLS IN THE K-12 CLASSROOM

BEVERLEY E. CRANE

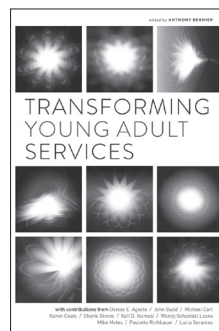
ISBN: 978-1-55570-774-3



SCHOOL LIBRARIAN'S CAREER PLANNER

HILDA K. WEISBURG

ISBN: 978-0-8389-1178-5



TRANSFORMING YOUNG ADULT SERVICES

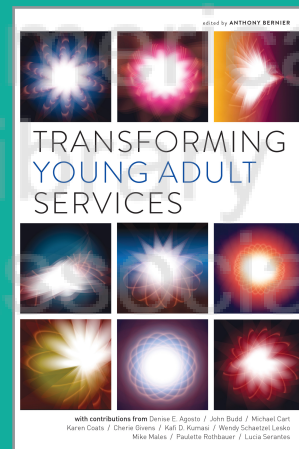
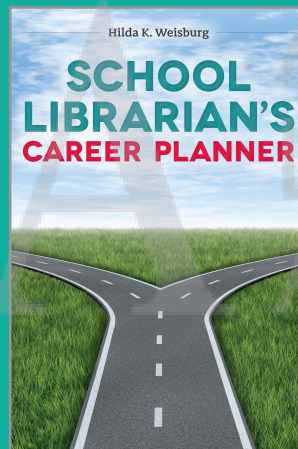
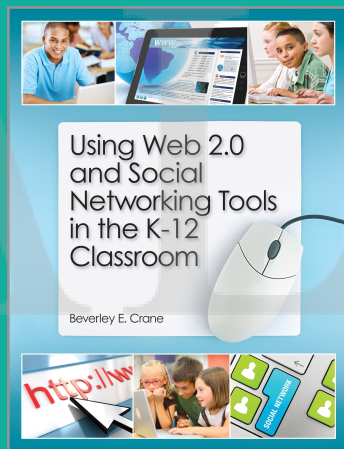
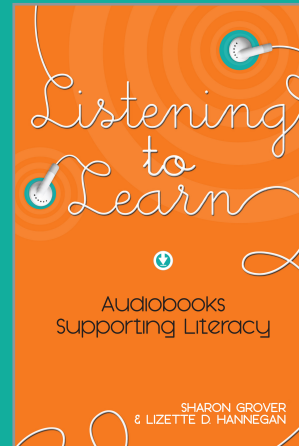
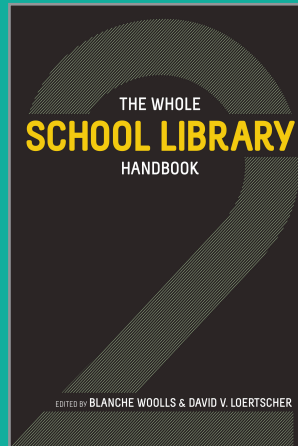
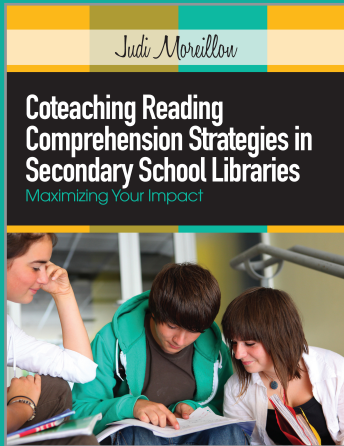
EDITED BY ANTHONY BERNIER

ISBN: 978-155570-907-5

Order today at alastore.ala.org or **866-746-7252!**

ALA Store purchases fund advocacy, awareness, and accreditation programs for library professionals worldwide.

You may also be interested in



alastore.ala.org



AMERICAN LIBRARY ASSOCIATION / alastore.ala.org
50 E. Huron Street, Chicago, IL 60611
1 (866) SHOPALA (866) 746-7252

ISBN 978-0-8389-1180-8



9 780838 911808